THE

ROYAL GRAMMAR

Compiled formerly by

Mr. William Lilly,

NOW

Modeſtly endeavoured to be rendred Plain and Obvious to the Capacity of Youth,

BY

A Supplement of Things defective,

AND

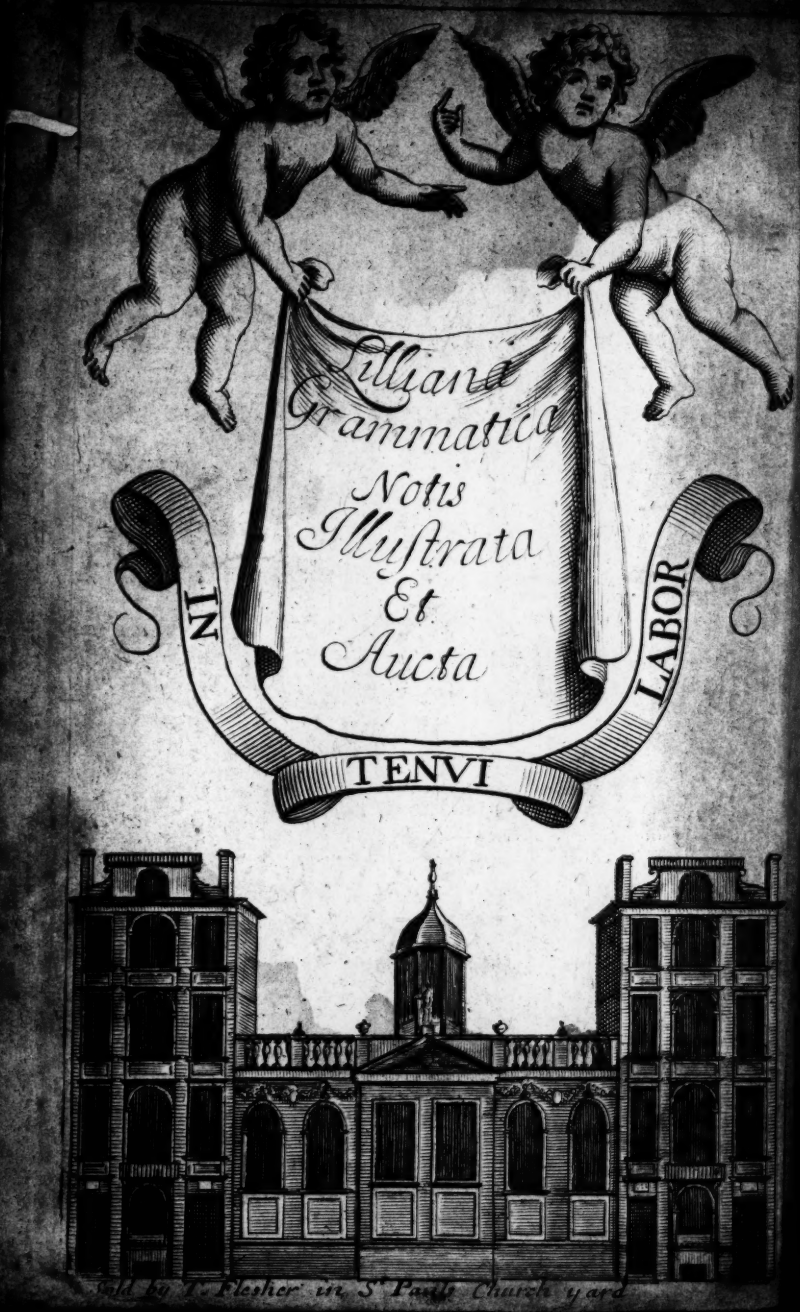
Alteration of Things Amiſs.

Together with

A POETICAL INDEX.

By *R. C.*

LONDON,
Printed for *Awnſham Churchill*, at the Sign of the *Black-Swan* in *Ave-Mary-lane*,
Anno MDCLXXXVIII.


Lilliana
Grammatica
Notis
Illustrata
Et
Aucta
NI
LABOR
TENVI
Sold by T. Fleshier in S.t Pauls Church yard

THE

ROYAL GRAMMAR

Compiled formerly by

Mr. William Lilly,

NOW

Modestly endeavoured to be rendred Plain and Obvious to the Capacity of Youth,

BY

A Supplement of Things defective,

AND

Alteration of Things Amiss.

Together with

A POETICAL INDEX.

By *R. C.*

LONDON,
Printed for *Awnsham Churchill*, at the Sign of the *Black-Swan* in *Ave-Mary-lane*,
Anno MDCLXXXVIII.

1688

1475
L62r

UMI

THE PREFACE.

MUltitudes of *Grammars* daily publiſhed ſeem to argue ſome great Faults, or Imperfections, in the *Royal Grammar*, long ſince Eſtabliſhed by Law, as the general Rule for Inſtruction, throughout the Kingdom; but yet when theſe are duely weigh'd by unprejudiced and ingenious men of greateſt Learning, Judgment and Experience, they are no better arguments againſt its ſufficiency, than the *Directory*, or new private Forms of Prayer, are againſt the perfection and excellency of the eſtabliſhed Service of our Church. And, for any thing I can ſee to it, as to the main, it is not improbable, but that if the *Common Grammar* had been as often corrected ſince its firſt compiling, as the *Common Prayer* hath been reform'd; and had been accommodated to the ſeveral Ages, by refining the Language, as well as the other, ſince the Reign of *Edward* the *ſixth*; it would by this time have been as perfect in all its meaſures, and as complete a Rule for *Education* in the *School*, as the other is for our *Devotions* in the *Church*.

But ſuch a conſiderable difference hath a continued negligence in the point of Education made; That, although the *Publick Service* (praiſed be God) hath arrived at a Perfection, defying even the malice of *Schiſm* and *Faction*: Yet the *old Grammar* retains its primitive rude-

72431

neſs; and, like the impolite unfaſhionable Buildings of that Age, ſhews us little that is either excellent or beautifull; beſides a good foundation. And 'tis not to be denyed, but that the little care the publick hath taken for the repairing ſuch breaches, as time hath made; or, ſupplying ſuch defects and imperfections as the great improvement of Learning hath diſcovered; hath much expoſed its reputation, rendred it obnoxious, liable to many Objections, and made way for thoſe prejudices againſt it, which will hardly be wrought off, by any private endeavours, without the interpoſing of *publick Authority*.

The Labours of private Men of great induſtry, judgment and ability, have not been wanting in this affair; eſpecially of ſome of greateſt eminency and merit in the preſent Age: So that, if what hath been done by way of *ſupplement*, by Mr. *Leeds*; or, by way of *explanation*; by Mr. *Walker*; or, by *comment*, as in the *Grammar* printed at *Oxford*, had been for length and language as well fitted to the capacities of Children as all theſe are for the uſe of Maſters; nothing of private intendment could hope to equalize them; and all farther endeavours of this nature would be altogether in vain.

Notwithſtanding others there are, whoſe learning and parts muſt not want their due commendation; yet will not ſubmit to the uſe of the eſtabliſhed *Grammar*, how perfect ſoever any Comments or Amendments ſeem to make it: But are for a more rational way (as is pretended,) called *Syncriſis*, or the comparing of one Language with another. Some of theſe being too violent (as 'tis moſt natural to run

from

from one extreme to another, Men thinking they can never run too far from what they once begin to loath) are for a method wholly new: but having over-laboured the point, and too much admired the Exotique notions of *Sanctius*, *Scioppius* and *Voſſius* (their *Proto-reformers* as they call them) are not yet ſo happy in methodizing their thoughts, as to obtain their ends, either in overturning the old methods, or offering any thing that looks feaſibly towards the erecting of a new. Yet, to ſpeak the truth, the profitable Labours of Mr. *Coles*, and others, the more moderate and judicious, have abundantly ſhewed, and by experience evinced the reaſonableneſs and uſefulneſs of *this way*: So that theſe notions daily gather ground; and what they get, the *old* muſt loſe; unleſs it be poſſible ſo to adjuſt the *one* to the *other*, and improve *the one* by *the other*, that they may be profitably uſed together; till *Authority* ſhall be at leiſure to take the matter under conſideration, ſeparate the Silver from the droſs, and ſet a *Royal ſtamp* upon ſomething extracted out of both, for the *Uſe* and *Service* of the *publick*.

Now to give a *Specimen* of what might poſſibly be done, if men of ſuitable judgment and ability were imploy'd about it, is the deſign of the following Book; wherein by theſe poor and mean endeavours of mine, the *Reader* will ſee how plain the *Accidence* may be made by altering ſome metaphorical or obſolete Expreſſions in the Definitions and Rules; how perfect, by ſupplying it out of the *Latin Grammar*; and where that is really defective or erroneous, out of others; how very uſefull, by adding in their proper places ſome of thoſe notions, which are

accounted new; and lastly, how familiar and agreeable to the *Genius* of the Nation, by adding the *Parallel Rules of the Royal Grammar* without alteration; so that any who is but indifferently skill'd in *Grammar*, may easily see the agreeableness of the one with the other, when fairly and judiciously compared together.

For the better accomplishment of which design; I have, out of all my Collections and experience, framed as *complete a Grammar* as I could; receding as little from the *Royal* as possibly I might: Onely lopping off what may justly seem superfluous, correcting what is erroneous, and supplying what is defective. And what doth more seldom occur in *Authours*, or is more disputable, I have set in the *Comment*; having always that deference and respect to our own *Grammar*, that, in all disputable matters, I have adhered to what is there set down, without very demonstrative Reasons, and undeniable Authorities to the contrary.

I have retain'd the usual method intirely in *Orthography*, *Etymology* and *Prosody*; and as far forth as the matter would allow in *Syntax* also: Likewise all the *Terms* of *Art*, the same names and order of *Declensions*, *Cases*, *Conjugations*, *Moods* and *Tenses*; the same number of the *parts* of *Speech* and their *Accidents*: Well knowing, that as in all Sciences (most commonly) the major part of Professours are the worse, and more ignorant; so in *Pedantick learning*, *Suum est docentibus, æquè ac discentibus tyrocinium*; Most of those, who teach Children the *Rudiments* of *Grammar*, cannot teach any thing, but what they have been taught themselves; and that too with great weakness and imperfection: So as, if in these most common, yet most necessary things,

any

any considerable change should be made; as the followers of *Sanctius*, and other *Philosophical Projectours*, seem to desire: Though the things delivered were, perhaps, more according to the critical balance of *Reason*, or more exactly according to the nature of the thing; yet wanting that condescention to the capacity, not onely of the *Learner*, but of many *Teachers* also, which for instruction sake is absolutely necessary; Such change would, instead of informing, more likely confound, and (I am afraid) where it should open, it would rather dull or darken the Understanding.

But, for all this, I would not have Men so stupidly devoted to *Antiquity*, as to rob themselves of the benefit of improvement by the wisedom and industry of later Ages, by a pertinacious obstinacy against all alterations; Nor yet so violent in their desires of *singularity* and *innovation*, as to deface utterly, where they may more reasonably and more readily repair. What, though some things be not in so good order as we could wish? Must we not rather accommodate our selves to some defects or imperfections, which will always be found in humane things; rather than by a sudden application of too violent a remedy, doe far more harm than good? Must we not consider that we do not live in *Republica Platonis*, but in *face Romuli*, and therefore when we cannot quietly get all that we may honestly desire; we must be content with what we can. *Solon* himself did not assign the excellency of his Laws to their intrinsick goodness and perfection; but to their fitness for the People, which was to receive them. And the same must needs be true in all things intended for publick instruction

and

and obſervation; they muſt be ſuited to the capacity of thoſe who are to uſe them, or all our labour is loſt. And as the caſe ſtands with us in *England* in relation to *Grammar*, *A gradual Reformation of errours may be feaſible; but an abſolute univerſal alteration, ſo ſudden and ſo violent, as ſome men dream of, is altogether impracticable.*

All that I ſhall add in defence of what I have retain'd is this; By how much the nearer this work ſhall come to the *Royal Grammar*; ſo much the more perfect I do eſteem it; and ſo much better doth it anſwer its *Title* and its *End*; Which is the reviving of *Old Lilly*, putting him in a more modiſh dreſs; and making the old rough way not another road, but a more commodious and a plainer path.

Neither ſhall I make any long *Apology* for ſuch alterations, as I have thought fit to make; being reſolv'd (by God's bleſſing) never wilfully to trouble the World with that, which muſt be uſhered in with an excuſe before-hand. What is well changed, pertinently and plainly expreſs'd, will plead for it ſelf; and if the firſt reading move an objection, I hope the ſecond will give an anſwer. And it would be to as little purpoſe to give the Reader a Bead-roll of the *old Grammarians*, which are all publiſhed together by *Elias Putſchius*; or to tell the World how many new ones have been conſulted in order to this work. Let it ſuffice him to know, that I have not boldly endeavoured this without the aid of the beſt Grammarians, both ancient and modern; which choice of Books and Comments, becauſe all men have not, nor leiſure to compare them, nor skill to judge of the faireſt ſenſe, I have therefore done my beſt to read and judge for ſuch a want; and where

where I have in any point receded from the *Common Grammar*; it hath been with a purpose of proceeding *in melius*, not *in aliud*; a mind of *amendment* and *proficiency*, not of *change* and *difference*. *Hic murus aheneus esto.*

I have indeed left out the *Articles* in declining of *Nouns*, the *second Person*, *Gerunds*, *latter Supine* and *Participles* in declining *Verbs*; I have taken a course much different from *As in præsenti*, for the finding the *Preterperfect* tense and *Supine*, with some other smaller additions in some places, abbreviations in others, as the matter required. But if these or any other be deemed errours, I shall not magisterially or peremptorily enforce them upon any, by argument and dispute; but propose them plain and naked, with all humble modesty, as probable helps to those, who think themselves not better provided; leaving their own reasonableness or usefulness to be their defence; and my Reader free in the mean time, if my sense satisfie him not, to use his own disquisition and judgment. He will find *Vossius*, *Danesius*, *Farnaby*, *The Oxford Commentatour*, *Lewis*, and many other of good note to have taken the same Course, and in them may be found such reasons, as in my opinion, are sufficient to overcome even all the prejudices to the contrary.

The *Syntax* is the onely part in which any considerable alteration is made; and even there, the Reader will find, that the *Concords* and *Rules* for *undeclinables* are so much the same with the *Old*, that nothing need be said concerning them; onely about the Case of the Substantive, which is commonly called *Government*, is the main difference and difficulty. And here I have taken hold of all advantages to make

it

it plain, eaſie and perfect; laying aſide all prejudice againſt any Method, how new ſoever it ſeem'd, ſo it did but really contribute to my deſign.

And though ſome late Writers ſeem to value themſelves much for their notions of *Government*, as if they were *new*, and the Children of their own brains; yet our own *Grammar*, if well conſidered, contains all, or moſt of the ways propoſed by the *Neotericks*, though not in the ſame order, nor perfection. For in our Accidence we learn two Caſes determin'd by their places, the *Nominative* before the Verb, the *Accuſative* after. Some by the *ſenſe*, as words ſignifying, *Meaſure of greatneſs*, *Time*, *Space*; Others (and theſe indeed the moſt) by the word going before. And if we do not overlook our *Etymology*, we find the Caſes deſcribed by their *Engliſh* ſigns, as the Genitive by *of*, the Dative by *to*, the Vocative by *O*, the Ablative by *in*, *with*, &c. Which was doubtleſs intended to facilitate the way to the *latin Tongue*, as may be ſeen by ſome inſtances in the *Syntax*, where the Caſe ſeems to be directed by the *ſign*, as *to* and *for* ſigns of *acquiſition*, *with*, the *inſtrument*, and *in*, *at*, *by*, *to*, and the like before *place*. So that what you have here done by *places*, *ſenſe*, and *ſigns*, though taken from the *New Grammarians*, yet is no new thing, but a fair and induſtrious improvement of the Notions diſpers'd in our *Common Grammar*: as by applying the *parallel Rules* to each particular, is made moſt clearly appear.

And whereas it may be objected, that ſuiting the Latin rules to this new model, does draw them ſo far out of their order, in which they ſtand in *Lilly*, that they become as diffi-

cult,

cult, as if they were wholly new; and alſo caſting ſo many Rules together, makes one ſo large, that it is both tedious and troubleſome; To which I anſwer, that they cannot by this means become more difficult, becauſe they are the ſame Rules, with an addition of one in *Engliſh*, ſhewing the true meaning and purpoſe of them all. Neither can they be ſo troubleſome or tedious, becauſe they are fewer; all uſeleſs notes and exceptions being left out.

Beſides, whereas in the *Rules of Conſtruction* our *Grammar* goes over the Caſes eight times, *viz.* in every diſtinct part of ſpeech; By this means you go but over them once, or very little more: Seeing Verbs, Nouns, Participles, Comparatives, Superlatives, Impersonals, Gerunds, Supines, and indeed all Derivatives, in the ſame reſpect govern the ſame Caſes with their Primitives. So that what Mr. *Farnaby* ſpeaks of as a great ſhortning of *Gramar work*, you have here, with this advantagious difference; in him you have a ſet of new words, with which many are unacquainted; here you have the very Rules which every one hath learned; and where they are proper and pertinent, you have the ſame examples.

What you find here for the making of the *Infinitives*, *Gerunds*, *Supines* and *Participles*, was not collected out of *Grammars* onely, but out of *Priſcianus Ephebus*, *Walker's Particles* and other Books, excellent for their uſe and elegancy, which I was very carefull to doe with what exactneſs I could; becauſe this part of Conſtruction is ſomewhat longſome, and meanly worded in the *Accidence*, extremely obſcure in the *Grammar*, and defective in both.

Figura-

Figurative *Syntax* I have made as ſhort as I could, not to be obſcure, affixing to the Rules of concord, by way of Exceptions, all ſuch irregularities as are uſually called *Figures*. And at the end of the *Rules of Government* are ſet ſuch others as will ſufficiently ſerve to ſolve all Conſtructions whatſoever.

The evacuating ſeveral Rules by *Ellipſis*, ſo much laboured by *Voſſius* in his Book *de Conſtructione*, and admired more by his Followers than by himſelf, (as may be ſeen by comparing his *leſſer Grammar* with the *Oxford Comment*,) I acknowledge to be very ingenious and reaſonable; and to have a ſhew of plainneſs to *Men*, who can ſupply all manner of Sentences, and vary them as their judgment (or *Fancy*) guides them: But the ſame is not ſo eaſie to *Young Learners* (perhaps *Teachers*,) who are hard enough ſet to make out what they have before them. My practice, grounded upon the beſt judgment I could make by experience, is this; To make Boys ſupply defective Sentences, (as well *Engliſh* as *Latin*) with all the words which their known Rules ſuppoſe a wanting: But in thoſe where the *Elleptick Conſtruction* is more common than that, which ſome ſuppoſe the *regular*, and ſo hath paſſed into a Grammar-rule: as, *Vixit Romæ*, *Accuſatur furti*, *eſt mecum domi*, and ſuch like. In thoſe, I take no notice of a *Figure*, but require the Rule, which effectually ſolves the doubt with equal eaſineſs and certainty. For which reaſon I have not made any conſiderable alteration upon that account.

The main difficulty ſeems to me, to be about Prepoſitions; and knowing when they are properly to be expreſſed; when more elegantly to be underſtood; for which all Books of

Particles,

Particles, and others have given no certain Rule; though the *Oxford Grammar*, *Sylvula* the fourteenth, bids faireſt for it: Nor is it poſſible, as far as I can ſee, to determine any thing certainly in this point. But if we may take meaſures from Rules of *Syntax* giving light that way; We ſhall find, that before words ſignifying *Space*, *Place*, with *to*, *meaſure* of *greatneſs*, *continuance of time*, &c. Which are uſually put in the Accuſative Caſe, there is really wanting, *per*, *ad*, or ſome Prepoſition ſerving to that Caſe. Alſo before words ſignifying *Praiſe*, or *Diſpraiſe*; *Inſtrument*, *Cauſe*, *manner of an Action*, *Price*; *The part affected*, *Part of time*, *Place* with *from*, *Meaſure of Exceeding*: Likewiſe before words following *Opus* and *Uſus*; *Adjectives* and *Verbs* ſignifying *plenty* or *want*, *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, *natus*, *ſatus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, &c. All which are commonly uſed in the Ablative Caſe: There is doubtleſs to be underſtood ſome Prepoſition ſerving to the Ablative. This *Ellipſis* is ſo uſual, that in our *Grammar*, theſe words are ſaid to be *governed* of the preceding. But the reaſons to the contrary are ſo clear and convincing, that herein I have left the common way, and leave the Tranſlatour of *Engliſh* into *Latin*, to be guided by the *ſenſe* and *ſigns*: But yet have ſo ſet the Latine Rules, that in Parſeing, they may be rendr'd when Maſters think fit to require them.

You have ſometimes a Latin Rule twice repeated, but it is where the Conſtruction by it hath a double aſpect to the *Engliſh*: *Laus & Vituperium* is properly ſet againſt the third exception from the ſign *of*: But yet ſet again in the Rule for the ſigns of the Ablative; becauſe the praiſe or diſpraiſe may be rendr'd by both

both these signs; as, *Vir bono ingenio, A man of a good wit*; *Vir Naso adunco, A man with a crooked nose*; and the like reason is for the rest, which are but few.

I make no great doubt, but time will shew the usefulness of such notes, and observations, as are added in the *Comment*, in which I challenge little besides the drudgery of collecting it out of the forementioned excellent Authours; and putting it into this method. Neither shall I much boast my diligence, or faithfulness, in gathering all that might please every man's humour: But must acquaint the Reader, that whatsoever would not answer the question *Cui bono*, was not thought worthy to be here inserted: For which reason all *niceties*, unusual *criticisms*, *odd words* and *phrases* of the *Ancients*, are purposely omitted; as, *Mis*, *tis*, for *mei*, *tui*; *Hui*, *hum*, *ho*, for *Huic*, *hunc*, *hoc*; *lact*, for *lac*; universal Supines, or Participles; as, *jutum*, *jaciturus*, *calituras*, and the like; leaving those who are in love with such Relicks of Antiquity, to fetch them from the more ancient Grammarians, where they may have a fuller account of these things than is any way fit to trouble Boys withall.

And as some, for the reason before mentioned, will think this work defective; so others may probably think it too long: seeing so very many far shorter have been published; whom I would desire to consider how hard it is to separate *obscurity* from *brevity*; and that long observation hath made it a *Proverb*, That *Compendiums bring but a Compendiary knowledge*; And if they please, to remember, what *Martial* wittily and truly saith,

Non

Non sunt longa quibus nihil est quod demere possis.

As for the *Paralipomena*, or those few Chapters added by way of *Supplement*; I held what was therein contained not absolutely necessary, and so not fit to interrupt the method of the *Grammar* with them; but because *Vossius*, *Dane*, and indeed very many since *Lilly*, seem to approve of knowing the Genders by the Terminations, and I had often mentioned such a thing in my Notes upon the Genders, I thought it expedient to set the method of knowing the Genders, by way of *Addition*, that who please may see, or make use of it. But I have not mentioned any Rules for knowing them by the signification; nor illustrated these with Notes, having done both these things in the *Grammar*, with the utmost perfection I was able.

The Rules for *Heteroclites* are inserted in most *Grammars*, yet frequently postpon'd in teaching, so that there was no need to take notice of them sooner. And in some I find them not mentioned at all; which is as much short, as to make too much ado about them would be over. 'Tis indeed convenient, out of respect to the learned Age in which we live, to doe all things intended for publick view with suitable diligence and caution; yet when we write things for the use of Boys, it must not be expected, that in each particular we should cleave a hair. And to assign the bounds and limits of the perfection and imperfection of words as to Numbers, and Cases, and Genders in Nouns, in perfect Tenses, Supines, *&c.* in Verbs: and to tell exactly what words are so and so used, and just how often, and in how many Cases, and

by what Authours, *&c.* is a task of extreme tediousness and difficulty; yet even from this I should not have been deterred, if I could have had any foresight, that it would turn to any good account; but if it were done, Boys would neither learn nor remember it, and so in all probability never at all use it. How unreasonable such a limitation of *Anomalous* words is, Mr. *Walker* excellently shews: (*Royal Grammar Explain'd*, p. 200.) 'To tie us up strictly to what 'hath been said by the *Romans* may seem hard, 'unless all that ever was spoken by *Romans* 'had been written; and all that had been 'written, had been extant; and also that 'they had spoken and written all that there 'can be occasion to speak or write: Where 'they have spoken, there it is necessary that 'we do speak as they did; but where they 'have not spoken there it is fit we have li'berty to speak as they would have spoken. Which reason hath much swayed with me, not to be very curious nor positive in the *Heteroclites* either of Nouns or Verbs; leaving those who are more critical, to *Dane's Paralipomena*, the *Oxford Comment*, or that most laboured and judicious Book of Mr. *Walker's* but now cited; which, as far as it goes, is *instar Omnium*.

The deficiency of the Common *Grammar* in the signification of Prepositions is a general complaint; which I have attempted to remedy in as plain and brief a way as I could, commending the more curious to that incomparably learned and most exact Dictionary of the Reverend and Judicious Dr. *Littleton*; or that usefull piece of *Jasberenyus*, called *Fax nova*. Which Books being dear, and not as yet in every

every hand, I thought it might be acceptable to beſtow a Chapter to that purpoſe here, how perfectly ſoever it be done elſewhere.

Where the Rules for pointing ſhould be placed, is yet under diſpute; It not being determined to which part of *Grammar* they belong; but that they are neceſſary, all agree: To pleaſe all parties (if I can,) at leaſt my ſelf, I have placed them here out of the way of diſpute; on the confines indeed of *Syntax* and *Proſody*; becauſe, in my judgment, they rather belong to Conſtruction and Pronunciation than to any other part.

And for the laſt Chapter, or the *Index Poeticus*, it contains as full an account of Syllables, whoſe quantities are not determin'd by Rules, as all others that I could meet with put together. I having with abundance of toil, and all the care I could uſe, compared it with *Smetius*, *Rhenius*, *Jaſe-berenyus* and the *Dictionaries*; and put it into this eaſie *Alphabetical order*, that any word may be quickly found: And then by the letter following the quantity of the precedent Vowel, is certainly known, without ſcanning or farther trouble. Whereas in *Smetius* there are abundance of *Iambick* and imperfect Verſes, which a Boy cannot ſcan, ſo that after all his ſearch he loſes his labour for want of ability to meaſure his Verſe. Into whoſe hand therefore this Book ſhall fall; if all the foregoing be of little value; (which, I hope, will not be ſo judged) yet here he hath for his money, much more perfect Rules of Quantities than *Smetius*; not half the bulk, and trouble to carry; nor much above half the price to purchaſe.

And now, after all this, conſidering the great

and universal fallibility of humane Nature, which renders it not onely possible that we *may*, but certain that every one of us *shall* err in something or other; *Vitiis nemo sine nascitur: Optimus ille est qui minimis urgetur:* And being by sad experience made conscious of my too many weaknesses and defects, proneneſſes to oversight and mistake; I humbly beg the candid and favourable Censure of such learned and judicious Persons as shall have occasion, or the curiosity to peruse these Papers: And most earnestly beseech the Almighty God to bless the same, to his own glory and the publick good, the great and main ends for which they were design'd.

Brief

Brief and plain Directions how to Teach the Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

HAving frequently observed the Usefulness of those Directions set forth in the Preface *before the* Accidence; *I cannot but think it a defect to omit them here, without somewhat of like nature in their stead. And doubtless all must concur in the way there proposed as to the main, but especially in the preliminary part. It being most certain, that nothing doth more injure young beginners than diversity of Methods, and making too much haste. Taking it then for granted that all ought to be taught in, or very near, the same way: And that the Learner ought always to be perfect of one thing, before he be troubled with another; The speediest and surest way to the Latin Tongue which I have known, and the most easie and pleasant both to* Master *and* Scholar *is this following, which I have set down in few and plain words; not desiring to impose it upon any; but propose it to all, with the humblest submission to greater experience and better judgments.*

First, *Let a Child begin with the* Declensions; *which he must be taught to read most perfectly, together with the* Examples *and* Table of Terminations; *and let him be exercised therein, till, looking on the Example, or rather the Table, he be able readily to decline any Substantive of what Declension or Gender soever. Then let him be taught to add the English to each word he declines, with the* Signs of the Cases, *in both Numbers; as,* Nominative Musa, A Song; Genitive Musæ, Of a Song; Dative Musæ, To a Song; *&c. Setting sometimes the English first; as,* Nominative, A Master, Magister; Genitive, Of a Master, Magistri; Dative, To a Master, Magistro, *&c. Next, learn him to know what is variable in every word; how much of it is changed in declining, and in what manner; as,* us, *in* Domin-us: er, *in* Magist-er; o, *in* Serm-o. *To which end I have, both in the Declensions and Conjugations,*

gations, ſeparated the mutable part of each word in the examples, with this note (-), *as* Mul-a, Domin-us, Am-o, Aud-io, *&c. Which, I hope, will be carefully obſerved by the* Printer, *and not neglected by the* Teacher, *nor unuſefull to the* Learner.

When a Child hath thus perfectly learned to decline the Subſtantives, the Adjectives will be learned without much trouble or difficulty; ſeeing they are declined after the ſame Declenſions: Yet, to facilitate this, you have in the Grammar Examples at large, of all ſorts of Adjectives, and alſo a perfect Table, *both which a Boy muſt be diligently exerciſed in, till he be expert; but here the adding of the Engliſh is unneceſſary, becauſe Adjectives have no ſigns of Caſes, but from their Subſtantives: Nor need the variable part be any farther taken notice of, than by being well inſtructed in the* Table.

From hence let him proceed to the Conjugations, *which he muſt learn to read with great facility; and then taking the Examples as they are at large, let him be taught to vary the Latine Verb in all its Moods, Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons: And after he hath herein been exerciſed with ſome variety of Examples, it may be fit to cauſe him to join the Engliſh with all the ſigns of Moods and Tenſes, putting uſually the Latin, but ſometimes the Engliſh firſt; as,* I love, Amo; Thou loveſt, Amas; *&c. Then Teach him the Table, and the uſe thereof, with all the mutable or* ſervile *Syllables, in each Tenſe; as,* Am-o, am-abam, am-avi, *&c. All which things it is fit Children be able eaſily to perform, before they come to ſay without-book; eſpecially if they be very young; that having their weak underſtandings in this ſort inform'd, they may find the task of committing to memory not ſo difficult and burthenſome as it is uſually repreſented.*

Having once attained to a readineſs in reading without miſcalling, ſpelling, or ſuch like hindrance, and being able praiſably to decline, *and* form, *looking on his Book; it may be ſeaſonable to put him, to get by heart; beginning at the Declenſions, and proceeding in the very*

ſame

ſame manner as he did in reading. But when he hath got his Declenſions perfect, let him have a Vocabulary *or* Nomenclator, *containing the moſt uſual Subſtantives, Adjectives and Verbs, out of which he muſt get for his Leſſon, a competent number, twice every day; which he muſt always decline very exactly according to their ſeveral* Declenſions *or* Conjugations. *In which when he hath arrived at ſuch a perfectneſs, as the judicious Maſter ſhall think ſufficient; then let him begin at* Grammar, *and by eaſie parts get without book all that part of* Orthography *and* Etymology *which is printed in the black Engliſh Character; (leaving the* Margin, *till more maturity,) uſing ſtill his* Vocabulary *for Leſſons; by which practice, a Boy before he come to* Syntax, *will not onely know all the* Parts *of* Speech *and their* Accidents, *but will alſo have learned moſt part of his* Primitive Nouns *and* Verbs.

Being thus prepared he may with courage proceed to Syntax, *and there learn firſt the Engliſh part of it, Printed in the black letter, where it will be of great profit, to turn the Engliſh Examples into Latin, and the* Latin *into* Engliſh, *and to propoſe ſeveral others, out of* Waſe's Grammar, *or* Engliſh Examples, *proper to every Rule as they are learned; And thus training a Child, with diligence and patience by thoſe Engliſh Rules (which are indeed properly Rules of direction) teaching him alſo to know and diſtinguiſh by the ſenſe and Signs all kinds of caſual words; as, Praiſe, Inſtrument, Place, Time, Price, &c. And what caſe they are uſed in, with their exception; by that time he comes to the end of* Syntax, *if his parts be anſwerable, he ſhall have got a competent knowledge, and be able to turn any ordinary Engliſh into Latin: And having ſo paſſed through the difficulty and wearineſs of* Grammar, *he may with chearfulneſs proceed to conſtrue, parſe, reade and imitate Authours; And, as often as he ſhall repeat his* Grammar, *(which muſt be frequently done by* Parts *in it every day,) let him be well examined in the* Margin *and Notes, ſtill more and more, as his capacity and knowledge increaſes, till he have a full underſtanding of the whole, which*

will

will bring with it a perfection (and in moſt an Elegancy) wonderfully exceeding the common way: And that with far leſs expence of labour and time. But in what time this is to be done, I ſhall not aſſign, ſeeing it depends much upon the Parts *and diligence of Boys, who herein differ as much from one another, as they doe in their Countenances, Statures and Conſtitutions.*

What is beyond this muſt be left to the prudence and experience of Maſters; *whoſe part and buſineſs it is, to preſcribe* pro re nata: *And to add and inculcate the more difficult things, as Boys increaſe in knowledge and capacity to receive them. And indeed this is ſo entirely referred to diſcretion, that no certain Rules are given for it: What I have here briefly offered for the conduct of Boys, as far as a* Methodical Grammar *will reach, is moſtly the ſumme of that foreign way of teaching uſed in the* Schools *of the* Jeſuits, *and ſo much admired by all for its wonderfull readineſs in bringing Boys to the Latine Tongue: Which I have here inſerted for the uſe of thoſe whoſe experience have not taught them a better, and in compliance with the deſire of our firſt* Compilers, *with whoſe words I ſhall conclude.* (Preface, p. 2.) It is not amiſs if one ſeeing by Trial an eaſier and readier way than the common ſort of Teachers do, would ſay what he hath proved, and for the commodity allowed, that others not knowing the ſame, might by experience prove the like, and then by proof reaſonably judge the like, not hereby excluding the better way, when it is found; but in the mean ſeaſon forbidding the worſe.

AN

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE *LATIN TONGUE.*

GRAMMAR is the Art of Writing and Speaking rightly 1.

It hath four Parts,

Orthographie, } { Syntax and
Etymologie, } { Prosodie.

Orthographie 2.

ORthographie is the first part of Grammar which teacheth to write words with proper and fit letters, as Lectio, not lexip.

A Letter is a mark of a simple sound: And in the Latin tongue there are four and twenty. Their characters, names and sound are the same with the English 3.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A Vowel is a letter which maketh a full and perfect sound of it self, and there are five in number (a, e, i, o, u,) whereunto is added the Greek vowel [y].

1. That is according to Rules. 2. It is derived from the Greek words ὀρθὸς, *rectus*, and γραφὴ, *Scriptura*. 3. But here note, 1. That (w) is never written in the Latin tongue, the sound thereof being supplied by (u) as *suadeo, suavis*. 2. That though (h) be written, yet it hath not here the power of a letter, but is onely a note of Aspiration. 3. That [*j* and *v*] are Consonants, when they are set before a Vowel in the same Syllable, as *jest, vine, Juno, Voluntas*. 4. That (*k, y, z*) are not used in purely Latin words.

A Diphthong is the ſound of two vowels in one Syllable; and of them there be five in number, namely [æ, œ, au, eu, ei,] as in Æneas, cœna, audio, euge, hei. Inſtead of [æ and œ] we commonly do pronounce [e].

A Conſonant 1 is a letter which muſt needs be ſounded with a vowel, as b with e, and the like.

A Syllable is the pronouncing of one letter or more with one breath, as A-ve,

A word is ſuch a comprehenſion of letters 2 and ſyllables 3, as helpeth mankind to expreſs their minds to one another.

1. Of the Conſonants nine are called Mutes, (*b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t,*). Four are called Liquids, (*l, m, n, r,*) to which ſome add *s*. Two are doublers, *i. e.* made up of two letters, as *x* of *gs*, or *cs*; *z* of *ds*, to which add *j* between two Vowels; which uſually makes the foregoing Syllable long.

2. Here you may note that Letters are written in great or little characters, the former called Capitals, as A, B, C, D, *&c.* the latter ſmall, as *a, b, c, d*, &c. When Capital Letters are written alone, or but few, they ſtand for the moſt part, either for Proper names, or Numbers, or ſome ancient Abbreviature, as, *A. Aulus, C. Caius, D. Decius, G. Gaius*, &c. *P. C. Patres Conſcripti. SPQR. Senatus Populuſque Romanus*, &c. *I.* one, *V.* five, *IX.* nine, *X.* ten, *C.* an hundred, *&c.* [In all which conſult the large Grammarians, or the Dictionaries.

In writing obſerve, { 1. To diſtinguiſh *j* and *v* Conſonants, from *i* and *u* Vowels. 2. To begin proper names, emphatical words, ſentences and verſes, with Capital letters, alſo *I* the Pronoun.

Obſerve alſo Primitive words, and the Supines of Verbs, and they will direct you to write aright thoſe that come of them: thus *gratia* is written by *t*, *audacia* by *c*, *manſion* by *ſ*, *ſtation* with *t*, becauſe they come from *gratus, audax audacis, manſum, ſtatum*.

In ſpeaking obſerve to pronounce { *C* before *e, i, y, æ, œ*, like *ſ*, as *cedrus, cyprus, cæcus, cœlum*, otherwiſe like *k*, as *caper*. Alſo *g* before *e* or *i*, like *j* Conſonant; as *genus, gigno*. *Ti* before a Vowel makes *ſi*, as *lectio*, unleſs when *ſ* goes immediately before the *t*, as *juſtior*, or in the beginning of a word, as *tiara*. In paragogical Infinitives, as *mittier*, or in Greek words, as *politia*.

3. In dividing of Syllables obſerve,

Etymo

Etymologie 4.

ETymologie is the ſecond part of Grammar, which teacheth the Definitions 5, Diviſions 5, and Accidents 5 of the parts 6 of Speech 6.

In Speech be theſe eight parts following,

Noun,	declined 7,	Adverb,	undeclined,
Pronoun,		Conjunction,	
Verb,		Prepoſition,	
Participle,		Interjection,	

Of a Noun.

A Noun is the Name of a thing 8: as the name of a hand, in latin, manus, the name of an houſe, domus; the name of goodneſs, bonitas.

Of Nouns ſome be Subſtantives, and ſome be Adjectives.

1. A Conſonant between two Vowels begins the following ſyllable; as, *a-mor*, *le-go*. 2. If two Conſonants come together in the middle of a word, the former for the moſt part ends the foregoing, and the latter begins the following ſyllable, as *an-mus*, *flam-ma*: But if they can begin a Syllable in that Language, they muſt not be parted, as; *a-ſper*, *te-ſqua*, *magi-ſter*, *A-tlas*. 3. Notwithſtanding in compound words each part muſt have its Conſonants, as, *in-ers*, *abſ-truſus*, *tranſ-eo*, *olus-atrum*, *et-enim*, &c.

And note that the letters of a ſyllable muſt not be diſjoined; therefore if a word be to be parted at the end of a line, it muſt be always at the end of a ſyllable, to which muſt be put this note of diviſion called *Hyphen* (-) as may be ſeen in the examples above.

4. It is derived from Ἔτυμος, *verus*, and λόγος, *ſermo*.

5. Definition ſhews what a thing is: Diviſion how many ſorts there be of it: Accidents are the things belonging to it. 6. So called becauſe all ſpeech is made up of them. 7. Viz. they change their endings. 8. *Thing* is here to be taken in the largeſt ſenſe, as it ſignifies whatſoever hath a being in the world, ſo comprehendeth perſons alſo.

A Noun Substantive 1 is the name of the thing it self, and needs no other word to shew its signification; as homo, *a man*, liber, *a book*, parens, *a father* or *mother*.

A Noun Adjective is the name of the manner, kind or quality; and must have another word joyned with it, whose manner, or quality it sheweth, as Bonus, *good*, pulcher, *fair*, levis, *light*.

A Noun Substantive is either, 1. Proper to some one thing, as, Carolus, *Charles*, Londinum, *London*; or 2. Common to all of the same kind, as, Homo, *a man*, Urbs, *a city*, Equus *a horse* 2.

Accidents of a Noun.

These seven things belong to a Noun, Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Comparison, Species and Figure.

Number 3.

In Nouns be two Numbers, the Singular, and the Plural. 1. The Singular speaketh of one 4, as Lapis, *a stone*. 2. The Plural speaketh of more than one; as Lapides, *stones*.

1. The English Noun Substantive may have [*a*, *an*, or *the*] before it, and cannot have the word [*man* or *thing*] immediately after it. The English Noun Adjective may have the word [*man* or *thing*] immediately after it, and cannot have [*a*, *an*, or *the*] before it, except a Substantive follow: But note that an Adjective is often put between the Substantive and his sign: as, *a good man*, *an old horse*, *a lewd boy*. 2. There are also Substantives of a middle nature, not so particular as the proper, nor so general as the common; and these are called Appellatives, as, *Episcopus*, *A Bishop*, *Chiliarchus*, *A Colonel*, *Miles*, *a Knight*. 3. Number is an Accident of a word, which sheweth whether it imply one or more. 4. Some Latin words do in the singular denote a multitude, *plebs*, *gens*, *turba*, *grex*, &c. Some in the Plural signifie but one, as, *Athenæ*, *the City of Athens*, *nuptiæ*, *a marriage*, *tenebræ*, *darkness*, and such like.

Case

Case 1.

NOuns be declined with six Cases, singularly and plurally; The Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

1. The Nominative Case cometh before a the Verb, and answereth to this Question [*Who?* or *What?* as Magister docet, *The Master teacheth.*

2. The Genitive is known by the signs 2 [*of* or's] and answereth to the Question [*whose?* or *whereof?*] as Doctrina magistri, *the learning of the Master,* or *the Master's learning.*

3. The Dative is known by this token 2, [*to*] and answereth to the Question, *to whom?* or *to what?* as, Do librum magistro, *I give a book to the Master.*

4. The Accusative followeth a the Verb, and answereth to this Question (*whom?* or *what?*) as, Amo magistrum, *I love the Master.*

5. The Vocative is known by calling or speaking to: as, O magister, *O Master.*

6. The Ablative may be known by these signs [*In, with, through, for, from, at, on, by* and *than* after the comparative degree.] as, manu, *with a hand,* Morte, *by death,* Frigidior glacie, *more cold than ice.*

It is often joined with some Preposition serving to the Ablative Case, as, de Magistro, *of the Master,* coram Magistro, *before the Master.*

1. A Case is an accident of a Noun, whereby it receives some change from the Nominative, either by sign or termination. All Cases but the Nominative are called oblique Cases. 2. Note that Signs of Cases are not always expressed, but frequently wanting, especially where words are placed out of Grammatical order. 3. Hereby it appears that Cases may be known in English by their places and signs: But in Latin they are distinguished by their Terminations.

Gender 1.

GEnders of Nouns are three 2. The Maſculine; the Feminine, and the Neuter.

1. The Maſculine Gender belongs to the Male-kind or Hees: as Vir, *a Man*, Rex, *a King*, Dominus, *a Lord*.

2. The Feminine belongs to the Female-kind, or Shees: as, Mulier, *a Woman*, Regina, *a Queen*, Ancilla, *a Maid*.

3. The Neuter is attributed to things without life; as, ſaxum, *a ſtone*, lignum, *wood*, onus, *a burthen*.

General Rules for knowing the Genders of Nouns.

I. ALL proper Names of Gods 3, Men 3, Rivers 4, Months, and Winds 5, Common Nouns ſignifying the Male-kind, and As (*a pound weight*) with all its parts 6 and compounds are of the Maſculine Gender; as, Jupiter, Apollo, Virgilius, Cato, Tibris, October, Auſter, Taurus, dodrans, ſemis, decunx, centuſſis, &c.

1. Gender is an Accident of a Noun which properly ſerveth to diſtinguiſh the Sex they ſignifie: but the uſe of it in Grammar is to ſhew what Termination of an Adjective the Subſtantive doth require. 2. Note that moſt Subſtantives are but of one Gender: Yet ſome are Maſc. and Fem. called the *Common of two*. Some Maſc. or Fem. called the *Doubtfull*. And Adjectives, though they have properly no Genders, yet ſeeing they have Terminations anſwering to all, they are ſaid to be Maſc. Fem. and Neuter, uſually called the *Common of three*. 3. To this Rule belong the Names of good and evil Angels, or Devils, as, *Gabriel*, *Raphael*, *Lucifer*, *Apollyon*; alſo the Names of People of ſeveral Countries, as, *Car*, *Ser*, *Perſa*, *Turca*, *Allabrox*, &c. And of all Creatures whatſoever, whoſe Sex is diſtinguiſhable, and can certainly be known to be of the Male-kind, as, *Bucephalus*, *Hyleus*, *Lacon*. And laſtly, all Appellatives, which denote the Titles, Offices and Functions proper onely to men; as, *Poëta*, *Dux*, *Præſul*, and ſuch like. 4. But *Styx* and *Lethe* are Feminines; as alſo divers in *a*, as, *Albula*, *Aldea*, *Druentia*, *Lupia*, *Matrona*, *Moſella*, *Sequana*, &c. *Tiberinus* and *Ister* are Neuters. *Nar* is both Maſc. and Neuter.

II. All

II. ALL Proper Names of Goddeſſes 7, Women 7, Countries, Cities, Iſlands, common Nouns belonging to the Female-kind, and the names of Trees are Feminines 8. as Juno, Dido, *domina*, Lacheſis, Dryas, *agna*, *læna*, Carthago, Phocis, Nabathæa, Britannia, Cedrus.

III. NOuns in *um* 9 and Aptotes 9 are of the Neuter Gender, as, Ovum, Saxum, fas, nihil, inſtar.

† The ſenſe of *Voſſius* and moſt modern Grammarians is this. That the Names of Rivers are of that Gender which the Termination doth require; and if at any time they differ, there is a *Syntheſis* in the expreſſion, and where the Adjective is Maſc. it hath reſpect to *Fluvius*; where Fem. to *Aqua*; and where Neuter to *Flumen*. 5. Except *Lalaps*. 6. Except *Uncia*, and its compounds which end in *a*. 7. To this Rule do belong all ſuch as the Ancients conceived of as Women. *i. e.* Poetical Muſes, Graces, Furies, Harpyes, and all ſorts of Nymphs, as, *Calliope*, *Aglaia*, *Tiſiphone*, *Celæno*, *Atropas*, *Deiopeia*, &c. And all Names of perſons and things that either are, or are conceived to be of the Female-kind, [ſuch as the word *She* may be applied to.] 8. Except, 1. Cities in *o*, and *us*, as, *Sulmo*, *Peſſinus*, &c. alſo, *Agragas*, and the Countrey *Pontus*, and the Trees, *Oleaſter*, *Dumus*, *Cythiſus*, which are Maſculines. 2. Cities in *a*, or *e*, of the third Declenſion; as, *Zeugma*, *Præneſte*, *Reate*; alſo, *Argos*, *Tuder*, *Gadir*, *Tibur*, *Hiſpal*, *Suthul*, &c. The Trees, *Siler*, *Suber*, *Thus*, *Robur* and *Acer*. And all in *um* or *on* (of the ſecond Declenſion) which are Neuters. 3. *Libanus* and *Rubus* which are Doubtfulls. And the City *Anxur*, which is Maſculine and Neuter.

† Here note alſo that when any Name of a Countrey, Iſland, City or Tree, of the Maſculine or Neuter Termination, is read in the Fem. Gender; It is ſaid (by Grammarians) to be the Figure *Syntheſis* or *Hyponœa*; reſpect being had in Cities to *Urbs*, in Countries to *Regio* or *Terra*, in Iſlands to *Inſula*, and in Trees to *Arbor*. 9. Except the proper Names of Men and Women; which follow the Gender of their Sex. And note that Aptotes, if Subſtantives or ſtanding for Subſtantives, are Neuter (unleſs they be proper Names) but if they be Adjectives they are of all Genders, as, *tot*, *quot*, &c.

IV. NOuns ſignifying both Sexes are of the Common of two 1, as, Conjux, parens, infans.

But in the names of Birds, Wild-beaſts, and Fiſhes, both kinds are contained under one Gender 2, as, hic paſſer, *a Sparrow*, hæc aquila, *an Eagle*, both *he* and *ſhe*, [words thus ſignifying both ſexes under one Gender, are called Epicenes.

1. That is, Maſculine when uſed for Males, and Feminine when uſed for Females. But here muſt be obſerved: That there are many Nouns which are Common onely in ſignification, not in Conſtruction; as theſe, which are always Maſculines, *Advena, agricola, alienigena, aſſecla, auriga, camelus, eliens, cocles, eques, exul, fur, homicida, hoſpes, homo, index, interpres, judex, laniſta, latro, liberi, lixa, obſes, opifex, pedes, pincerna, præſul, princeps, pugil, rabula, ſenex, ſodalis, verna.* Theſe are always Feminines, *Proles ſoboles.* Theſe are Neuters, *Animal, jumentum, mancipium, ſcortum*, and ſuch like. Thus though [*fur*] ſignifie a thief, which may be either man or woman, yet you muſt not ſay of a woman that ſhe is *magna fur*; but *fœmina furaciſſima*; nor muſt we ſay of a woman in diſtreſs, *homo eſt miſera*, but *mulier eſt miſera*, and ſo of the reſt.

Theſe following (and they onely) may by good Authority be uſed in both Genders, *Adoleſcens, affinis, antiſtes, augur, autor, bos, canis, civis, comes, conjux, conviva, cuſtos, dux, hæres, hoſtis, infans, judex, miles, municeps, nemo, parens, patruelis, ſacerdos, ſus, vates* and *vindex.* And of theſe, ſome are accounted Adjectives put Subſtantively, as, *adoleſcens, affinis, patruelis*; ſome are rarely uſed in the Feminine Gender, as, *augur, miles, conviva.*

There are alſo ſome words which in their ſignification are applicable either to men or women; yet without reſpect to either follow the Gender of their Termination, as, *opera, labourers*; *cuſtodia, vigilia, excubiæ, ſuch as keep watch and ward*; *cura*, for *curator*, and *copiæ, ſouldiers* and *military forces*; all which are Feminines. The reaſon whereof is conceived to be this, becauſe theſe words do properly import action, and are but by a Metonymie put for the men who are the Actours, and therefore in their Tropical uſe do keep the Gender of their proper ſignification.

2. In theſe words, where the Sex is not mentioned, the Gender is known by the Termination, or increaſe of the Genitive caſe; as, *Tigris fera, Elephas longævus*; but if the Sex be intimated it muſt follow it; as, *a Gooſe with egg, Anſer fœta*; *an Elephant with young, Elephantus gravida.*

Three

Three ſpecial Rules to know the Gender by the Genitive Caſe.

I. NOuns not increaſing 2 in the **Genitive** caſe are of the **Feminine Gender**: as, muſa, muſæ; nubes, nubis; caro, carnis.

Maſculines excepted, *i. e.* not increaſing.

Except. 1. NOuns in as, es, and a. 3 derived from the firſt Declenſion of the Greeks, as, tiaras, pyrites, cometa. Nouns in er, os, and us 4. as, venter, logos, annus, 5. Alſo Natalis 6, aqualis, lienis, orbis, callis, caulis, follis, collis, mentis, enſis, fuſtis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, ignis, caſſis, faſcis, torpis, ſentis, piſcis, unguis, vermis, vectis, poſtis, axis, mugilis, unicornis, acinacis, colis, cucumis, vepres, and cenchris, [*a ſerpent*] all which are of the **Maſculine Gender.**

1. To this Rule belong all Latin Nouns of the firſt Declenſion, and all ſuch as do not increaſe of the third. 2. A Noun is ſaid not to increaſe when it hath no more ſyllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative caſe. 3. Except, *charta, margarita, cataracta, catapulta, cochlea, ganſapa, mandragora, paraſanga, metreta*; all which are derived of Greek words of the firſt Declenſion, and yet are Feminines. 4. To this ſecond branch of the firſt Exception belong moſt words which are of the ſecond and fourth Declenſions. 5. Except, *humus, domus, alvus, vannus, colus, acus, ficus, idus, manus, porticus* and *tribus*. Greek Nouns changing *os* into *us*; as, *papyrus, antidotus, coſtus, diphthongus, byſſus, abyſſus, chryſtallus, ſynodus, ſapphirus, eremus, arctus, nardus, methodus, diatetus, exodus, periodus, hyſſopus, biblus, carbaſus, diametrus, perimetrus, amethyſtus* and *chryſolithus*; all which are Feminines. But note that *dialogus, ſtylus, tonus, hyacinthus* [*a flower*] *camelus, iſthmus, ſcyphus, beryllus, opalus, ſmaragdus* and *corymbus*; are of the Maſculine Gender. 6. *Natalis* is in its own nature an Adjective, and joyned with Subſtantives of all Genders; as, *natalis gurges, natalis hora, natale ſolſtum*; and here *dies* may ſeem to be underſtood. Like unto which is *Majalis*, [ſupple, *porcus*] *jugalis*, id eſt, *equus, mularis*, i. e. *dans*; and *annalis* [ſubaudi, *liber*.]

Neuters

Neuters not increasing.

Except. 2. NOuns in e, making is in the Genitive case, as, mare, rete, are Neuters. So cacoethes, hippomanes 1, virus, pelagus, and vulgus 2.

Doubtfulls not increasing.

Except. 3. TAlpa, dama 3, canalis, finis, clunis, penus, amnis, pampinus, corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis, phaselus, atomus, grossus, barbitus, balanus, rubus, palumbes; which are doubtfull.

The Second Special Rule.

II. NOuns increasing acutely 4 are of the Feminine Gender: as, pietas, pietatis; virtus, virtutis; tellus, telluris.

Masculines increasing acutely.

Except. 1. THese Monosyllables, sal, sol, ren, splen, pes, glis 5, mos, flos, ros, mus, deus, mons, pons, fons, gryps, grex, seps, (*a serpent*). Also Polysyllables in n, as lichen, delphin, and in o signifying a body; as leo, curculio; or numerals, as senio, ternio, likewise sermo. Lastly words in er, or, os 6, dens; as, crater, conditor, heros, bidens 7; so, torrens, oriens, elephas,

1. To these add *nepenthes, panaces, sylacophanes, chaos, melos* or *apes*. 2. Which is also Masculine. 3. i. e. They are used by Authours in the Masc. or Fem. Gender indifferently. But note that *canalis, finis, penus, amnis, pampinus, anguis*, are rather Masculines; *clunis, corbis, linter* and *atomus*, are rather Fem. *Talpa* and *dama* are Masc. in Virg. in all other Authours, Feminine. 4. A Noun is said to increase acutely, or sharply, when in the [illegible] the last syllable save one the voice is lifted up. 5. A Dormouse. 6. Except, *cos, dos* and *eos*, which are Fem. 7. A Pitch-fork.

adamas,

adamas, tapes, lebes, magnes, meridies, hydrops nycticorax, thorax, phœnix, bombyx, eſox, volvox, and ſpadix, are Maſculine.

Neuters increaſing acutely.

Excep. 2. These monoſyllables, Mel, fel, lac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas vaſis, os, rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Polyſyllables in al or ar 1. as, capital, laquear, are Neuters.

Doubtfulls increaſing acutely.

Except. 3. Python 2, ſcrobs, ſerpens, bubo, rudens, grus, perdix, link, limax, ſtirps, calx 3, dies 4, are Doubtfull.

The Third Special Rule.

III. Nouns increaſing flatly 5, are of the Maſculine Gender; as, ſanguis ſanguinis, ordo ordinis, codex codicis.

Feminines increaſing flatly.

Except. 1. Words in do, or go, of more than two Syllables, making dis in the Genitive caſe; as, dulcedo dulcedinis, imago imaginis. Greek Nouns in as 6, is and ys, as lampas, jaſpis, erinnys, are of the Feminine Gender: So Grando, fides, compes, teges, ſeges, arbor, halcyon, hyems, ſindon, acedon, caſſis, cuſpis, pecus pecudis, forfex, forpex, tomex, carex, ſupellex, ſandyx, appendix, hiſtrix, coxendix, filix, and lagopus.

1. Except, *Salar*, which is Maſc. 2. *Python, bubo, rudens,* are uſually Maſc. *grus* and *linx* are moſtly Feminines. 3. A Flock. 4. *Dies* is onely Maſc. in the Plural number. 5. A Noun is ſaid to increaſe flatly when the voice in ſounding the laſt ſyllable ſaue one of the Genitive caſe, doth fall low. 6. Except, *Artocreas* and *Erysipelas*, which are Neuters.

Neuters

Neuters increaſing ſtatly.

Except. 2. NOuns ſignifying a dead thing ending in a, as problema, in en 7, as, omen; in ar, as, jubar; in ur 7, as jecur; in us, as onus; in put, as Occiput, are Neuters: ſo cadaver, verber, iter, ſuber, tuber, uber, gingiber, laſer, ſiſer, piper, papaver, cicer, filer, ſpinther, laver, and the remaining caſes of juger, atrio atriplex, æquor, marmor, ador, and pecus making pecoris in the Genitive caſe.

Doubtfulls increaſing ſtatly.

Except. 3. CArdo, margo, cinis, obex, pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex, culex, natrix, cortex, varix, ales, ſilex, and onyx with its compounds, are Doubtfull 1.

Declenſion 2.

There be five Declenſions of Nouns, diſtinguiſhable one from another by the termination of the Genitive caſe ſingular.

The firſt is when the Genitive, and Dative caſe ſingular end in æ 3. The Accuſative in am. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in a. The Nominative plural in æ. The Genitive in arum 4. The Dative in is.

7. Except *pecten* and *furfur*, which are Maſculines. 1. *Cardo, ramex, culex, natrix* and *onyx* [*an Alabaſter-ſtone* or *box*] are Maſculines. *Forceps, anas* and *onyx*, [*a jewel*] are Feminines. *Margo, cinis, obex, pulvis* and *pumex* are read in both Genders, but rather the Maſc. 2. A Declenſion is a ſet of Terminations by which a Noun, Pronoun or Participle, is changed into ſix Caſes, in both Numbers. 3. In old Authours it is ſometimes changed into *ais*, as, *aulai, pictai*. Sometimes into *as*; as, *paterfamilias, vias, Latonas*. 4. The Genitive plural of this Declenſion, as alſo of the ſecond, is often ſyncopated; as, *Æneadûm, Græjûm*, for *Æneadum, Græjugenûm*. So, *Deûm, virûm*, for *Deorum, virorum*.

The

The Accusative in as. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in is.

As in Example.

Singulariter.	*Nominat. musa.*	Plurariter.	*Nom. musæ.*
	Genitivo. musæ.		*Gen. musarum.*
	Dativo. musæ.		*Dat. musis.*
	Accusativo. musam.		*Accus. musas.*
	Vocativo. musa.		*Voc. musæ.*
	Ablativo. musa.		*Abl. musis.*

Note that filia and nata do make the Dative and Ablative plural in is, or in abus. Also Dea, mula, equa, and liberta make the Dative and Ablative plural in abus onely. 1. 2.

The second is when the Genitive singular ends in i. The Dative in o. The Accusative in um. The Vocative for the most part like the Nominative. The Ablative in o. The Nominative plural in i. The Genitive in orum. The Dative in is. The Accusative in os. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in is.

1. There be also read, *animalus, dominabus, famulabus, servabus, asinabus, sociabus,* which are so used to distinguish them from the Dative and Ablative of the second Declension, or for the better knowing of the Sex. 2. Greek Nouns of the first Declension end in *as* or *es* of the Masc. Gender, or *e* of the Fem. as, *Æneas, Anchises, Penelope,* And are thus declined:

Singulariter	N. *Æneas.*	Ac. *Æneam*	*Æneas*
	G. *Æneæ.*	Voc. *Æneæ.*	
	D. *Æneæ,*	Abl. *Æneâ.*	

Singulariter	N. *Anchises.*	Ac. *Anchisen.*	*Anchises*
	G. *Anchisæ.*	Voc. *Anchise*	
	D. *Anchisæ.*	Ab. *Anchise*	

Singulariter	N. *Penelope.*	Ac. *Penelopen.*	*Penelope*
	G. *Penelopes.*	Voc. *Penelope.*	
	D. *Penelope.*	Ab. *Penelope.*	

As in Example.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
Nom.	*domin-us.*	*Nom.*	*domin-i.*
Gen.	*domin-i.*	*Gen.*	*domin-orum.*
Dat.	*domin-o.*	*Dat.*	*domin-is.*
Accuſ.	*domin-um.*	*Accuſ.*	*domin-os.*
Voc.	*domin-e.*	*Voc.*	*domin-i.*
Abl.	*domin-o.*	*Ablat.*	*domin-is.*

Here is to be noted that when the Nominative ends in us, the Vocative ends in e. But Deus maketh o Deus. Agnus, lucus, chorus, fluvius, and populus (*people*) make e and us. Proper names in ius, make their Vocative in i, by caſting away us; as Georgius, o Georgi; ſo filius, o fili, and genius, o geni.

Here note alſo that all Nouns of the Neuter Gender of what Declenſion ſoever they be do make the Nominative, Accuſative, and Vocative alike in both numbers; And in the plural number theſe three cales end always in a.

As in Example.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
Nom.	*regn-um.*	*Nom.*	*regn-a.*
Gen.	*regn-i.*	*Gen.*	*regn-orum.*
Dat.	*regn-o.*	*Dat.*	*regn-is.*
Accuſ.	*regn-um.*	*Accuſ.*	*regn-a.*
Voc.	*regn-um.*	*Voc.*	*regn-a.*
Abl.	*regn-o.*	*Abl.*	*regn-is.*

Except Ambo, and Duo, which make their Neuter Gender in o, and are thus declined.

Pluraliter,			
Nom.	*Amb-* / *Du-* *o, æ, o.*	*Accuſ.*	*os, as, o.*
Gen.	*orum, arum, orum.*	*Voc.*	*o, æ, o.*
Dat.	*obus, abus, obus.*	*Abl.*	*obus, abus, obus.* *

* Greek Nouns of the ſecond Declenſion are thus declined:

Singulariter			
N.	*os, on.*	Ac.	*on.*
G.	*i.*	Voc.	*os, on.*
D.	*o.*	Ab.	*o.*

Singulariter			
N.	*Orph-eus.*	Ac.	*Orph-ea, eon.*
G.	*Orph-ei, eos.*	Voc.	*Orph-eu.*
D.	*Orph-ei.*	Ab.	*Orph-eo.*

The

THE third is when the Genitive ſingular endeth in is. The Dative in i. The Accuſative in em, and ſometime in im, and ſometime in both. The Ablative in e or i, and ſometime in both. The Nominative plural in es. The Genitive in um, and ſometimes in ium. The Dative in bus. The Accuſative in es. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in bus.

As in Example.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
Nom.	*lap-is.*	*Nom.*	*lap-ides.*
Gen.	*lap-idis.*	*Gen.*	*lap-idum.*
Dat.	*lap-idi.*	*Dat.*	*lap-idibus.*
Accuſ.	*lap-idem.*	*Accuſ.*	*lap-ides.*
Voc.	*lap-is.*	*Voc.*	*lap-ides.*
Abl.	*lap-ide.*	*Abl.*	*lap-idibus.*

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
Nom.	*Veſt-is.*	*Nom.*	*Veſt-es.*
Gen.	*veſt-is.*	*Gen.*	*veſt-ium.*
Dat.	*veſt-i.*	*Dat.*	*veſt-ibus.*
Accuſ.	*veſt-em.*	*Accuſ.*	*veſt-es.*
Voc.	*veſt-is.*	*Voc.*	*veſt-es.*
Abl.	*veſt-e.*	*Abl.*	*veſt-ibus.*

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
Nom.	*nom-en.*	*Nom.*	*nom-ina.*
Gen.	*nom-inis.*	*Gen.*	*nom-inum.*
Dat.	*nom-ini.*	*Dat.*	*nom-inibus.*
Acc.	*nom-en.*	*Acc.*	*nom-ina.*
Voc.	*nom-en.*	*Voc.*	*nom-ina.*
Abl.	*nom-ine.*	*Abl.*	*nom-inibus.*

Exceptions and neceſſary Obſervations upon the Caſes of the third Declenſion.

THE *Accuſative uſually endeth in* em.] But ſome end in *im* onely; as, *vim, ravim, ſitim, tuſſim, magadurim, amuſſim, cucumim, elim, decuſſim, centuſſim, furim, pelvim, ſecurim, ſinapim, praſepim, cummim* (ſeu) *gummim, cannabim, mephitim, Leuciaſpim, Opim, Syrtim, Charybdim:* And the names of Rivers; as, *Tibrim, Thameſim.*

Some end both in em *and* im.] as, *Bipennis, canalis, ſtrigilis, cutis,*

cutis, fementis, lens, ſentis, cratis, meſſis, ovis, ratis. Alſo, *clavis, febris, navis, aqualis*; but theſe more uſually end in *em*. And, *puppis, turris, reſtis*, which have more frequently *im*.

THE *Ablative Caſe regularly endeth in* e.] But ſome make their Abl. in *i* onely; ſuch are, 1. Neuters in *al, ar, e*; as, *Vectigal, calcar, mare*. Abl. *Vectigali, calcari, mari*. Except, *Sal, far, nectar, hepar* and *jubar*, in e onely. 2. Adjectives in *is* and *er*, whoſe Neuters end in *e*, and Subſtantives, when put adjectively; as, *annalis, affinis*, &c. And names of months; as, *Aprilis*, Abl. *Aprili*. 3. Nouns not increaſing which make their Accuſative *im*; as, *tuſſis, ſitis*, Abl. *tuſſi, ſiti*. Except, *reſtis*, Abl. *reſte* onely.

Some make their Ablative both in *e* and *i*, viz. 1. Adjectives of one Termination; as, *felix, felice* or *felici*. Except, *pauper, ſoſpes, dives, hoſpes, pubes, ſenex*, and the Compounds of *pes*. Alſo Participles put abſolute, which have *e, par* and *memor*, which have *i* onely. [But the Compounds of *par* have ſometimes *e*.] 2. All Comparatives; as, *doctiore* vel *doctiori*. 3. Verbals in *trix*; as, *victrix, victrice* or *victrici*. 4. Thoſe which make their Accuſ. in *em* or *im*. To which may be added, *ignis, amnis, lapellex, unguis, vectis, avis, claſſis, fuſtis, finis, civis, imber, poſtis, occiput, furfur, pars, ſors, affinitas, collis, labes, lapis, mel, meſſis, mons, mugil, navis, orbis, ovis, vas; ſeges, ſordes, ſtercus*, which though they much more frequently end in *e*, yet are ſometimes read in *i*.

NOuns of the Neuter Gender which make their Ablat. ſingular in *e*, make their Nominative plural in *a* impure. But ſuch as make their Ablat. ſingular in *e* and *i*, or *i* onely, make their Nom. plural in *ia*. Except, *Uber, vetus*, and Comparatives which have onely *a*; *plus* hath *plura* and *pluria*.

THE *Genitive plural in* um.] But theſe have *ium*. 1. Such as make their Ablat. in *e* or *i*, or *i* onely. Except Comparatives, and theſe, *vetus, ſtrigilis, vigil, ſeges, memor, mugil, inops, dives, celer, mugilis, uber, puber, impuber, degener, congener, compos, impos, bicorpor, tricorpor*. Adjectives in *ex*; as, *ſupplex*; words in *fex*; as, *artifex*; in *ceps* of *capio*; as, *particeps*; all which make *um*. 2. Moniſyllables which end in two Conſonants; as, *trabs, trabium*: So, *as, mas, vas vadis, nix, nox, os, lar, dis, lis, glis, vis, fex, dos, cos, faux, mus, cor*. Alſo Polyſyllables in *ns* and *rs*; as, *infans, cohors, infamium, cohortium*. 3. Nouns in *es, is, er*, not increaſing. Except, *Vates, panis, juvenis, canis, volucris*, which have *um*; *apes, apum* and *apium*. 4. The parts of *as* (*a pound weight*) and *æra*: and Polyſyllables in *as*, which often make *ium*; as, *ætatium, calamitatium*, &c. 5. Nouns which want the ſingular number; as, *Penalium, munium*. Except, *Opes, proceres, lemures, primores, celeres, lucres*, which make, *Opum, procerum, lemurum*, &c.

The names of Feaſts wanting the ſingular number, make their Gen. plural in *ium* and *orum*; as, *Bacchanalia, Bacchanalium & orum*.

orum. Vinalia, vinal-ium & -orum. Alites and *cœlites*, make *alituum*, and *cœlituum*, and *bos* makes *boum*.

NOuns of the Neuter Gender in *a* do make their Dative and Ablat. plural in *is* and *ibus*; as, *Poema, poematis* and *poematibus. Symptoma, ſymptomatis* and *ſymptomatibus*, &c. Note alſo that *bos* hath *bobus* and *bubus*.

THE Ancients uſed ſometimes to make the Accuſative caſe plural of this Declenſion end in *eis* or *is*; as, *parteis, omneis, Saldis, Trallis*; but not now to be imitated.

GReek Nouns referred to this Declenſion uſually retain their Gender as in their proper tongue, and for the moſt part are declined after the ſame manner, making their Gen. in *os*. their Dat. in *i*. their Accuſat. ſingular in *a* or *n*. the Voc. by caſting away *s*. the Accuſ. plural in *as*.

As in the Table and Examples.

	Singulariter.					Plural.
Nom.	Titan	Pallas	Paris	Crater	Dido	Es
Gen.	anos	antos	idos	eros	ûs	um aν
Dat.	ani	anti	idi	eri	ô	ibus
Accuſ.	ana	anta	ida: in	era	o	as
Voc.	an	a	i	er	o	es
Abl.	ane	ante	ide	ere	o	ibus

The fourth is when the Genitive caſe ſingular endeth in ûs. The Dative in ui. The Accuſative in um. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in u. The Nominative plural in us. The Genitive in uum. The Dative in ibus. The Accuſative in us. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in ibus.

As in Example.

Singulariter,
Nom. Fruct-us.
Gen. fruct-ûs 1.
Dat. fruct-ui 2.
Acc. fruct-um.
Voc. fruct-us.
Abl. fruct-u.

Pluraliter,
Nom. fruct-us.
Gen. fruct-uum.
Dat. fruct-ibus 3.
Acc. fruct-us.
Voc. fruct-us.
Abl. fruct-ibus.

The fifth is when the Genitive and Dative caſe ſingular do end in ei 4. The Accuſative in em. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in e. The Nominative plural in es. The Genitive in erum. The Dative in ebus. The Accuſative in es. The Vocative like the Nominative. The Ablative in ebus.

As in Example.

Singulariter,	*Nom.*	*Faci-es.*	
	Gen.	*faci-ei.*	
	Dat.	*faci-ei.*	
	Acc.	*faci-em.*	
	Voc.	*faci-es.*	
	Abl.	*faci-e.*	
Pluraliter,	*Nom.*	*faci-es.*	
	Gen.	*faci-erum.*	
	Dat.	*faci-ebus.*	
	Acc.	*faci-es.*	
	Voc.	*faci-es.*	
	Abl.	*faci-ebus.*	

1. In ancient Authours we find the Genitive caſe of the fourth Declenſion ſometimes ending in *uis*; as, *ejus annuis cauſa.* Sometimes in *i. nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.* 2. The Dative is ſometimes in *u*; as, *veſtitu nimis indulges. Jeſus* makes the Accuſ. in *um*, all other caſes in *u.* 3. *Acus, artus, lacus, tribus, ficus, ſpecus, pecus, quercus, partus, portus, veru,* make the Dative plural in *ubus*; yet ſometimes we find *artibus, portibus, veribus*; alſo *quæſtibus & -ubus*; *genibus* and *genubus.* 4. In old Authours it is found in *es, ii, i* and *e:* as, *Equites daturi illius dies pœnas. Munera latitiámque dii. Vix decima parte die reliquâ.* So *fames.* Gen. *fami.* and *fides, fidi.*

Examples of all the Declenſions together.

	Nom.	G.	D.	Ac.	V.	Ab.
Singulariter	Muſ-a	æ.	æ.	am.	a.	â.
	Domin-us	i.	o.	um.	e.	o.
	Veſt-is	is.	i.	em.	is.	e.
	Fruct-us	ûs.	ui.	um.	us.	u.
	Faci-es	ei.	ei.	em.	es.	e.

	N.	G.	D.	Ac.	V.	Abl.
Pluraliter	æ.	arum.	is.	as.	æ.	is.
	i.	orum.	is.	os.	i.	is.
	es.	ium.	ibus.	es.	es.	ibus.
	us.	uum.	ibus.	us.	us.	ibus.
	es.	erum.	ebus.	es.	es.	ebus.

The

The declining 1 of Adjectives.

ADjectives in us 2 and er 3 have three endings in the Nominative caſe. The firſt Maſculine, the ſecond Feminine, and the third Neuter: as, hic ſacer, hæc ſacra, hoc ſacrum 4.

Theſe are called Adjectives of three Terminations, and are declined after the firſt, and ſecond Declenſions, in this manner.

Singulariter,	*N. Bonus, bona, bonū.*	Pluraliter,	*N. boni, bonæ, bona.*
	G. boni, bonæ, bono.		*G. bonorum, bonarum.*
	D. bono, bonæ, bono.		*D. bonis. (bonorum.*
	Ac bonū, bonā, bonū		*Ac. bonos, bonas, bona.*
	V. bone, bona, bonum.		*V. boni, bonæ, bona.*
	Ab. bono, bona, bono.		*Ab. bonis.*

Note that unus, totus, ſolus, and alſo ullus, alius, alter, uter, and neuter, with their compounds make their Genitive ſingular in ius, and their Dative in i 5.

As in Example.

Singular.	*N. ſolus, ſola, ſolum.*	In all other caſes they are declined like bonus, ſave that the five laſt rehearſed do lack the Vocative caſe.
	Gen. ſolius.	
	Dat. ſoli, &c.	

1. The varying of an Adjective by Genders into other endings in the ſame caſe, is called *motion.* 2. Except, *vetus.* 3. Except, *Pauper, degener* and *uber,* which are of the third Declenſion. Here note alſo, that *celer, celeber, acer, ſaluber, campeſter, volucer, pedeſter, equeſter, alacer, ſylveſter, paluſter,* are thus declined in the Nominative caſe, Nom. *hic celer, hæc celeris, hoc celere,* or, *hic & hæc celeris & hoc celere.* Gen. *celeris,* &c. in all other caſes like Adjectives in *is.* 4. Here may be added *ſatur,* which is of three terminations. 5. Theſe in ancient Authours are ſometimes found like *bonus;* as, *nulli conſilii, mihi ſola, alteri tota, una rei, neutri generis.*

Adjectives in is 6 and Comparatives have two endings; The firſt Maſculine and Feminine. The ſecond Neuter. Nominative hic & hæc triſtis & hoc triſte. Nominative hic & hæc doctior, & hoc doctius.

Adjectives in x, ar, as, es, or, os, and s impure, have but one ending in the Nominative caſe, which is of all three Genders: as. hic, hæc & hoc fœlix, ſo audax, impar, cujas, dives, concolor, compos, ſolers, prudens.

Both theſe ſorts of Adjectives are declined after the third Declenſion; in this manner.

6. Exc. Some Poetical Adjectives which have only one termination and one Gender: as, *Erymanthis urſa.* Ovid. *Manalis ora.* Virg.

A Table for the declining of Adjectives.

		Singulariter.						Pluraliter.			
Adj. of	Gend.	Nom.	G.	D.	Ac.	V.	Ab.	N. V.	Gen.	D. Ab.	Ac.
III Term.	M.	r us	i	o	um	r e	o	i	orum	ĩs	os
	F.	a	æ	æ	am	a	â	æ	arum	is	as
	N.	um	i	o	um	um	o	a	orum	is	a
Adj. of II Term.	M. F.	is & e	is	i	em & e	is & e	i	es & ia	ium	ibus	es & ia
	M. F.	or & us	is	i	em & us	or & us	e or i	es & ia	ium	ibus	es & ia
Adj. of I Term.	M. F.	x, or, os, es, ar, as, s. impure	is	i	em & x r	x s	e or i	es & ia	ium	ibus	es & ia
	N					r					

† Here note that not only in the Nominative, but alſo in every other caſe, where an Adjective hath only one termination; it is of all three Genders: where two, the firſt is Maſc. and Fem. and the ſecond Neuter: where three, the firſt is Maſcu. the ſecond Fem. and the third Neuter. Exc. in the Ablative ſingular in *e* and *i*. each of theſe terminations being of all Genders.

Singulariter,	*No. Tristis & triste.*	Pluraliter,	*N. tristes & tristia.*
	G. tristis.		*G. tristium.*
	D. tristi.		*D. tristibus.*
	Ac. tristem & triste.		*Ac. tristes & tristia.*
	V. tristis & triste.		*V. tristes & tristia.*
	Ab. tristi.		*Ab. tristibus.*

Singulariter,	*N. Fœlix.*	Pluraliter,	*N. fœlices & fœlicia.*
	G. fœlicis.		*G. fœlicium.*
	D. fœlici.		*D. fœlicibus.*
	Ac. fœlicem & fœlix.		*Ac. fœlices & fœlicia.*
	V. fœlix.		*V. fœlices & fœlicia.*
	Ab. fœlice or *fœlici.*		*Ab. fœlicibus.*

Comparison.

ADjectives whose Signification may increase or be diminished may form Comparison.

There be three degrees of Comparison. The Positive. The Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Positive betokneth the thing absolutely without excess: as, durus, *hard.*

The Comparative somewhat exceedeth his Positive in Signification; adding thereto [*er* or *more*] as, durior, *harder* or *more hard.*

The Superlative exceedeth his Positive in the highest degree; adding thereto [*most, very,* or *est*] as, duriſſimus, *most hard, very hard,* or *hardest.*

Both these are formed of the first case of the Positive that endeth in i. by putting thereto or to make the Comparative, ſſimus to make the Superlative: as; of duri, duri-or, duri-ſſimus; of dulci, dulci-or, dulci-ſſimus; of triſti, triſti-or, triſti-ſſimus.

But when the Positive endeth in r. the Superlative is formed of the Nominative case by putting to rimus: as pulcher, pulcher-rimus; ater, ater-rimus. So, nuperus, nuperrimus; vetus, veterrimus.

From these general Rules are excepted these that follow.

1. Bonus, melior, optimus. malus, pejor, peſſimus. Magnus, major, maximus. Parvus, minor, minimus. Multus plurimus, multa plurima, multum plus plurimum.

2. Theſe Nouns in lis, which form the Superlative by changing is into limus. Facil-is, facillimus; humil-is, humil-limus; ſimil-is, ſimil-limus, always; and ſo ſometimes gracilis, agilis, and imbecillis.

3. Adjectives derived of dicor, loquor, volo, facio, make their Comparative and Superlative by changing us into entior and entiſſimus; as, Maledicus, maledic-entior, maledic-entiſſimus. So magniloquus, benevolus, mirificus.

4. When a Vowel cometh before us, the termination is not varied; but the Comparative is made by magis. The Superlative by maximè or valdè: as, pius, magis pius, maximè pius; aſſiduus, magis aſſiduus, maximè or valdè aſſiduus 1.

5. Some want the Poſitive: as, prior, primus 2. Some want the Comparative, as Sacer, Sacerrimus 3. Some the Superlative; as dexter, dexterior. 4, 5.

1. So alſo, *Almus, balbus, calvus, canorus, canus, cavus, cicur, claudus, compos, criſpus, degener, diſpar, delirus, egenus, edentulus, exos, geminus, gelidus, jejunus, impos, magnanimus, mediocris, memor, mirus, mutus, mutilus, præditus, rudis, ſalvus, ſylveſter, vetulus, vulgaris, unicus*; and ſome few others.

† Here note that *Aſſiduior, exiguior, idoneior, neceſſarior, ſtrenuior, piiſſimus, egregiiſſimus, aſſiduiſſimus.* Alſo, *multiſſimus, tuiſſimus, ipſiſſimus, criſpiſſimus, ſpiſſigradiſſimus*, and ſuch like are ſometimes found in *Plautus*, and other old Authours; but being now out of uſe are not to be imitated.

2. So, *Deterior, deterrimus; ocior, ociſſimus; penitior, penitiſſimus.* 3. So, *invitus, invitiſſimus; inclytus, inclytiſſimus.* Alſo, *apricus, bellus, conſultus, diverſus, falſus, fidus, invictus, inviſus, meritus, novus, nuperus* and *perſuaſus.* 4. So, *ſiniſter, ſiniſterior; declivis, declivior:* alſo, *communis, dives, ingens, infinitus, juvenis (junior) longinquus, opimus, proximus, ſalutaris, ſatur, ſenex, ſupinus* and *taciturnus.* 5. Some are Comparatives onely; as, *exterior, licentior*; alſo, *habitior, ſatior, ſequior.*

Species 1.

The Species of a Noun is twofold. Primitive and Derivative.

Primitive when a word is the first of its kind: as, homo, bonus.

Derivative, when a word cometh of another: as, justitia, bonitas.

Of Derivatives the most remarkable are,

1. Patronymicks 2, which are names taken from Parents, Ancestors, or some Relations: as, Pelides from Peleus, Phaetontides, from Phaeton.

2. Gentiles, which shew the Countrey or Nation: as, from Anglia, *England*; Anglus *an English man*: so from Judæa, Judæus; from Roma, Romanus.

3. Possessives, which being taken from men, or their offices, signifie [of or belonging to]; as of Rex, regius, *of* or *belonging to a King*; of pater, paternus, *of* or *belonging to a Father*.

4. Diminutives, which signifie less than the word they come of; as, of lapis *a stone*, lapillus, *a little stone*.

5. Denominatives: which are all other words

† Note that some Adverbs and Prepositions are said to form Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees; which are these: *Citra, citerior, citimus. Extra, exterior, extimus* and *extremus. Infra, inferior, infimus. Intra, interior, intimus. Ultra, ulterior, ultimus. Diu, diutior, diutissimus. Nequam, nequior, nequissimus. Post, posterior, postremus. Prope, propior, proximus. Supra, superior, summus* and *supremus.*

¶ Gentiles, Possessives, Numerals, Materials, Diminutives, Interrogatives, Temporals, Participials in *dus*: Such as end in *bundus, imus* and *plex*, (except, *simplex* and *multiplex*,) also Verbals in *vus*, and the Compounds of *gero* and *fero* are seldom compared in any wise. Yet even to these when the sense urgeth, we may add *magis* and *maximè.*

1. Species is an Accident of a word which sheweth whether it be a root, *i. e.* a word which cannot be reduced to less; or a Derivative, which by some adding or changing of the termination is formed from another. 2. These have five terminations, *des* and *ion*, Masc. *as, is* and *ne*, Fem. as, *Pelides, Japetion, Thestias, Nestoris* and *Nerine.*

derived of Nouns; not reductible to the former head: as, cavea of cavus, pomarium of pomum, of which there are divers sorts; viz. Materials: as, aureus of aurum, and all derivative Numerals. ☞

6. Verbals, which are derived of Verbs; as, lectio of lego, cursus of curro, auditus of audio.

7. Participials, which are Participles turned into Nouns: as, sapiens, doctus.

8. Adverbials, which are such as are derived from Adverbs; as, hodiernus ab hodiè: crastinus à cras.

9. Prepositionals, which come from Prepositions: as, contrarius à contra, propinquus à propè.

Figure 2.

FIgure of a Noun is twofold. Simple and Compound.

1. Simple, the parts whereof signifie nothing asunder: as, justus, publicus, manus, res.

☞ Words signifying Number, answering to the Question *quot? how many?* are called *Cardinals*; as, *Unus, duo, tres, quatuor, quinque, sex, septem*, &c. from whence are derived; 1. *Ordinals*, which signifie both Order and Number, and answer to *Quotus? of what number, order* or *place?* Such are, *primus, secundus*, &c. 2. *Distributives*, which signifie the giving the like Number to every person of many; and answer to, *Quoteni? how many a piece?* [Thus, *Qui dedit duobus duos nummos, & qui dedit binos nummos*, differ; he who gave *duos nummos*, gave one to each; but he who gave *binos*, gave two a piece,] Such be, *terni, quaterni, octoni, deni*, &c. 3. *Multiplicatives*, which signifie so many fold, answering to *Quotuplex?* as, *duplex, triplex, quadruplex, decuplex, centuplex.* 4. *Proportionals*, which shew the Proportion of one thing to another, and answer to, *Quotuplus? how often so much?* such be. *duplus, triplus*, &c. 5. *Temporals*, which properly denote the number of time; and answer to, *Quotannis? how many years old?* or the like; as, *trimus, quadrimus; biennis, triennis; bimestris, trimestris.* To which some add Ponderals, words denoting Weight; as, *centenarius lapis, a stone an hundred pound weight.*

(*a*) Figure is an accident of a word which sheweth whether it be simple or compound.

2. Compound is made up of two or more significant words joyned together in one: as, of res, and publica, is made respublica: of male and fidus, malefidus.

Pronoun.

Pronoun.

A Pronoun is a part of Speech much like to a Noun and uſed inſtead thereof in ſhewing or rehearſing; as, inſtead of naming my name, I ſay Ego. *I.* inſtead of naming thy name, I ſay Tu, *Thou*; inſtead of naming any other perſon or thing, I ſay, ille, *he*: illud *it*.

There be nineteen Pronouns, Ego, tu, ſui, ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui, quis, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, cujus, noſtras, veſtras, & cujas.

Accidents of a Pronoun.

There belong to a Pronoun, Species, Declenſion, Perſon, Number, Caſe, Figure, and Gender.

(*b*) Nouns are compounded theſe eight ways eſpecially: 1. With Nouns; as, *paterfamilias*, *unoculus*. 2. With Pronouns; as, *aliquis*, *unuſquiſque*, *hujuſmodi*. 3. With Verbs; as, *agricola*, *Lucifer*, *fædifragus*. 4. With Participles; as, *breviloquus*, *Plebiſcitum*. 5. With Adverbs; as, *maleſanus*. 6. With Prepoſitions; as, *internuncius*, *diſcors*. 7. With Numerals; as, of *annus*, *biennium*, *triennium*; of *dies*, *biduum*, *triduum*: [*menſis*,] *bimeſtris*, *trimeſtris*. 8. With ſyllabical adjections; as, *uterque*, *tantundem*.

Here note that ſometimes the parts of a Compound word are both entire; as, *jusjurandum*. Sometimes both parts altered; as, *artifex*. Sometimes the one part is entire, and the other altered, as, *meridies*.

Note alſo that when a Compound is made up of two Nominative caſes, both are declined; as, Nom. *Reſpublica*; Gen. *Reipublicæ*. Except, *alteruter*, *Leopardus*, *oluſatrum*; where the laſt onely is varied: And alſo words compounded with *duo*; as, *duovigeſimus*. If a word be made up of a Nom. caſe and an Oblique, the Nominative onely is declined; as, *Paterfamilias*; Gen. *patriſfamilias*. If it be made up of two Oblique caſes, it is altogether invariable; as, *hujuſmodi*, *cujuſmodi*.

Species.

The Species of Pronouns is twofold. 1. Primitives, which are derived of others; as, Ego, tu, ſui, ille 1, ipſe, iſte, hic 2, is, qui, & quis.

Of which ſome are called Demonſtratives, which ſhew a perſon or thing preſent, or not ſpoken of before: as, Ego, tu, ſui 4, ille, ipſe 3, iſte, hic & is.

Some

Some are called Relatives, which have reſpect unto, or rehearſe a perſon or thing, that was ſpoken of before; as, is, ſui, & qui. Alſo ille, ipſe, iſte, and ſometimes hic.

2. Derivatives, which are derived of others; as, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, cujas, noſtras, veſtras, & cujas.

Whereof ſome are always uſed when poſſeſſion is ſignified and called Poſſeſſives; as, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, & veſter.

Some are called Gentiles, becauſe they ſignifie belonging to Nations, or Sects, or Factions: as, noſtras, veſtras, & cujas.

1. *Ille* is uſed when we expreſs a perſon with grandeur and eminency; as, *Alexander ille magnus.* But *iſte* when we mention one with contempt; as, *iſtum amulum ab ea pellito.* 2. When *hic & ille* are referred to words going before, *Ille* moſt commonly relates to the firſt mentioned and more remote; *hic* to the latter and nearer; as, *Agricola contrarium eſt paſtoris propoſitum: ille quam maximè ſubacto & puro ſolo gaudet, hic novali graminoſoque, ille fructum è terra ſperat, hic è pecore.* Where *ille* hath always reſpect to *Agricola*, and *hic* to *Paſtor.* 3. *Ipſe* may be put for any perſon when (*ſelf*) is ſignified; as, *ipſe vidi*, *I my ſelf have ſeen*, *ego* being underſtood: *ipſe videris*, *thou thy ſelf haſt ſeen*, *tu* being underſtood: *ipſe dixit*, *he himſelf hath ſaid.* But note that *himſelf* and *themſelves* in the Oblique caſes, are to be made by *ſui*, *ſibi*, *ſe*, &c. 4. *Sui & ſuus* are called *Reciprocals*, that is, they are to be uſed for *his* or *their*: When in Engliſh the Particle *own* may be thereunto added; as, *Petrus parcit ſuis erroribus*; *Peter ſpareth his own errours.*

And here note that Quis, cujus, & cujas, are called Interrogatives, becauſe they always aſk a queſtion.

Declenſion.

There be four Declenſions of Pronouns.

I. These three Ego, tu, ſui are Subſtantives, and of the firſt Declenſion.

Nom.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
	Nom. Ego.		*Nom. Nos.*
	Gen. mei.		*Gen. noſtr-* *um.* *i.*
	Da. mihi.		*Dat. nobis.*
	Accu. me.		*Accuſ. nos.*
	Voc. caret.		*Voc. caret.*
	Abl. me.		*Abl. nobis.*

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
	Nom. Tu.		*Nom. Vos.* *um.*
	Gen. tui.		*Gen. veſtr-* *i.*
	Dat. tibi.		*Dat. vobis.*
	Accuſ. te.		*Accuſ. vos.*
	Voc. tu.		*Voc. vos.*
	Abl. te.		*Abl. vobis.*

Singul. and Plural. *Nom. caret.* *Gen. ſui.* *Dat. ſibi.* *Accuſ. ſe.* *Voc. caret.* *Abl. ſe.*

II. All the reſt are Adjectives: whereof theſe ſeven, Ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, qui & quis, are of the ſecond Declenſion, and thus declined.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
	N. Iſte, iſta, iſtud.		*N. Iſti, iſtæ, iſta.*
	G. iſtius.		*G. iſtorū, iſtarū, iſtorum.*
	D. iſti.		*D. iſtis.*
	Ac. iſtū, iſtā, iſtud.		*Ac. iſtos, iſtas, iſta.*
	V. caret.		*V. caret.*
	Ab. iſto, iſta, iſto.		*Ab. iſtis.*

Ille is declined like iſte, and alſo ipſe, ſaving that the Neuter Gender in the Nominative and Accuſative caſes ſingular maketh ipſum.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
	N. Hic, hæc, hoc.		*N. Hi, hæ, hæc.*
	G. hujus.		*G. horū, harum, horum.*
	D. huic.		*D. his.*
	Ac. hunc, hanc, hoc.		*Ac. hos, has, hæc.*
	V. caret.		*V. caret.*
	Ab. hoc, hâc, hoc.		*Ab. his.*

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
	N. Is, ea, id.		*N. Ii, eæ, ea.*
	G. ejus.		*G. eorum, earum, eorum.*
	D. ei.		*D. iis, vel eis.*
	Ac. eum, eam, id		*Ac. eos, eas, ea.*
	V. caret.		*V. caret.*
	Ab. eo, eâ, eo.		*Ab. iis, vel eis.*

N. Qui,

Singulariter,	*N. Qui, quæ, quod.*	Pluraliter,	*N. Qui, quæ, quæ.*
	G. cujus.		*G. quorū, quarū, quorū.*
	D. cui.		*D. quibus, vel queis.*
	Ac. quem, quā, quod.		*Ac. quos, quas, quæ.*
	V. caret (vel qui.		*V. caret.*
	Ab. quo, quâ, quo,		*Abl. quibus, vel queis.*

Quis is alſo thus declined, as Quis, quæ, quid, Genitive, cujus, Dative, cui, &c. But note that quid with its compounds are always uſed like Subſtantives of the Neuter Gender.

Quiſquis is uſed onely in theſe caſes thus; Nominative, Quiſquis, quicquid. Accuſative, quicquid. Ablative, Quoquo, quaqua, quoquo.

Qui in the Ablative is ſeldom uſed but in compoſition; as, quicum.

III. Theſe ſix meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter, and cujus; are of the third Declenſion; and be declined like Noun Adjectives of three Terminations; as, Nominative, meus, mea, meum. Genitive, mei, meæ, mei, &c. But meus in the Vocative hath the Maſculine in i. as Vocative mi, mea, meum.

IV. Theſe three Noſtras, veſtras, and cujas be of the Fourth Declenſion, and are declined like Noun Adjectives of two Terminations: as, Nominative, noſtras, & noſtrate. Genitive, noſtratis. Dative, noſtrati, &c. like triſtis.

Perſon.

A Pronoun hath three Perſons.

The firſt ſpeaketh of himſelf; as, Ego, *I*; Nos, *We*.

The ſecond is ſpoken to, as, Tu, *Thou*; Vos, *Ye*. And of this perſon is every Vocative caſe.

The third perſon is ſpoken of: as, Ille *He*; Illi, *They*. And therefore all Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles are of the third perſon.

Figure

Figure 1, Number, Caſe 2, and Gender 3 are the ſame as in a Noun.

† This compounding of Pronouns renders them difficult in their declining: Wherefore it muſt here be obſerved (as before in the Noun,) That when a word is compounded of two Nominative Caſes, without alteration, both are declined.

As in Example.

1. Pronouns may be compounded theſe ſix ways: 1. With Nouns; as, *aliquis, unuſquiſque, hujuſmodi.* 2. With Pronouns; as, *Quiſquis, iſthic, tuipſe.* 3. With Verbs; as, *Quivis, quilibet.* 4. With Adverbs; as, *quiſquam, eccum, ellum.* 5. With Conjunctions; as, *hiccine, quiſnam.* 6. With Syllabical Adjections; *met, te, ce, pte, dem, piam, cunque*; and ſuch like: as, *Egomet, tute, hicce, tuapte, idem, quiſpiam, quicunque, quidam.*

2. All Pronouns want the Vocative Caſe, Except, *Tu, meus, noſter* and *noſtras.*

3. Pronouns are of all Genders; *Ego, tu, ſui* follow the Gender of the Nouns whoſe places they ſupply; as, a Man ſpeaking of himſelf is *Ego*, Maſc. a Woman ſpeaking is *ego*, Fem. *&c.* The reſt being Adjectives agree with their Subſtantives, as Nouns Adjectives do.

Singulariter,
- *Nom. Unuſquiſque, unaquæque, unumquodque.*
- *Gen. uniuſcujuſque.*
- *Dat. unicuique.*
- *Accu. unumquemque, unamquamque, unumquodque.*
- *Voc. caret.*
- *Abl. unoquoque, unâquâque, unoquoque.*

Thus Egoipſe, G. mei, ipſius, &c. Tuipſe, G. tuipſius, &c. and all ſuch like.

When a word is compounded of the Nominative Caſe and an oblique, or part of another word, or ſome ſyllabical adjections. The Nominative is to be declined, whether the particle wherewith it is compounded ſtand before or after it; as in theſe Examples.

Singulariter,
- *Nom. Idem, eadem, idem.*
- *Gen. ejuſdem.*
- *Dat. eidem.*
- *Accuſ. eundem, eandem, idem.*
- *Voc. caret.*
- *Abl. eodem, eadem, eodem.*

Nomi

Pluraliter,
Nom. iidem, eadem, eadem.
Gen. eorundem, earundem, eorundem.
Dat. iiſdem, vel eiſdem.
Acc. eoſdem, eaſdem, eadem.
Voc. caret.
Abl. eiſdem, vel iiſdem.

Singulariter,
Nom. Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid.
Gen. alicujus.
Dat. alicui.
Accuſ. aliquem, aliquam, aliquid.
Voc. caret.
Ablat. aliquo, aliqua, aliquo.

Pluraliter,
Nom. Aliqui, aliquæ, aliqua.
Gen. aliquorum, aliquarum, aliquorum.
Dat. aliquibus.
Accuſ. aliquos, aliquas, aliqua.
Voc. caret.
Abl. aliquibus.

Thus Nequis, nunquis, ſiquis, & ecquis, which laſt hath in the feminine both ecqua, & ecquæ.

Singulariter,
Nom. Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque.
Gen. cujuſcunque.
Dat. cuicunque.
Accuſ. quemcunque, quamcunque, quodcunque.
Voc. caret.
Abl. quocunque, quacunque, quocunque.

Pluraliter,
Nom. Quicunque, quæcunque, quæcunque.
Gen. quorumcunque, quarumcunque, quorumcunque.
Dat. quibuſcunque.
Accuſ. quoſcunque, quaſcunque, quæcunque.
Voc. caret,
Abl. quibuſcunque.

Thus are declined, quivis, quilibet, quidam, & quipiam, ſave that the laſt maketh in the Neuter Gender, quippiam for quidpiam. Quiſquis, with divers others is defective, and uſed onely in theſe following caſes, thus,

Sin-

Singul. { *Nom. Quiſquis, quicquid.* / *Accuſ. quicquid.* / *Abl. quoquo, quaqua, quoquo.* } Plur. *Caret.*

Singul. { *Nom. Iſtic, iſtæc, iſtoc vel iſtuc.* / *Ac. iſtunc, iſtanc, iſtoc vel iſtuc.* / *Ab. iſtoc, iſtac, iſtoc.* } Plural. { *N.* & *Ac.* } *Iſtæc.*

So illic, illæc, illoc.

Singul. { *N. Hiccine, hæccice, hoccine.* / *Ac. Hunccine, hanccine, hoccine.* / *Abl. Hoccine, haccine, hoccine.* } Plural. { *N.* & *Ac.* } *Hæccine.*

Sing. Ac. Ellum, ellam. Plur. Ac. Ellos, ellas.

So Eccum, eccam, Eccos, eccas, for Ecce illum, Ecce eum, *&c.*

VERB.

A Verb is a part of Speech declined with Mood and Tenſe, and betokeneth doing, as, amo, *I love*; or ſuffering, as, amor, *I am loved*; or being, as, ſum, *I am.*

Accidents of a Verb.

These eight things belong to a Verb; Kind, Mood, Tenſe, Figure, Species, Number, Perſon and Conjugation.

KIND. 1.

Of Verbs there are five kinds, Active, Paſſive, Neuter, Deponent, and Commune.

A Verb Active endeth in o, and betokeneth to doe, as, Amo, *I love*; and by putting to r, it may be a Paſſive, as Amor.

1. Every Verb hath three things, by ſome of which it may be known from any Verb of another kind: *viz.* Termination, Signification, and Property; as, the Termination of an Active is *o*, whereby it is known from Paſſives, Deponents, and Communes, the ſignification *to doe*, whereby it is known from Paſſives: the Property to take *r* and become a Paſſive, whereby it is eſpecially known from Neuters; and ſo in the reſt.

A Verb

A Verb Paſſive endeth in or, and betokeneth to ſuffer, as, Amor, *I am loved*; and by putting away r, it may be an Active, as, Amo.

A Verb Neuter endeth in o, or m, and cannot take r to make him a Paſſive, as, curro *I run*, ſum *I am*; and it is engliſhed ſometime actively, as, curro *I run*; and ſometime paſſively, as, ægroto *I am ſick*.

A Verb Deponent endeth in r like a Paſſive, and yet in ſignification is both Active and Paſſive, as, loquor verbum *I ſpeak a word*, or Neuter, as, glorior *I boaſt*.

A Verb Commune endeth in r, and yet in ſignification is both Active and Paſſive; as, Tueor te *I defend thee*, Tueor à te *I am defended by thee*.

MOOD.[2]

THere are four Moods: the Indicative, the Imperative, the Potential and the Infinitive.

The Indicative ſimply affirms, or denies; as, amo *I love*: or elſe asketh a queſtion, as, amas tu *doſt thou love?*

The Imperative commandeth, intreateth or permitteth, as, ama tu, *love thou*, amato ille, *let him love*.

The Potential ſhews a power, duty or deſire, and is known by theſe ſigns: *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *ſhould*, or *ought*, as amem *I may* or *can love*.

The Infinitive Mood notes no certain number, or perſon, and is known by this ſign *to*, as, amare *to love*.

2. A Mood is an Accident of a Verb, which expreſſeth the manner of its ſignifying.

1. This Mood when it hath an Adverb of wiſhing joined with it, is called the Optative; when a Relative, or a Conjunction, it is called the Subjunctive.

To this Mood do belong three Gerunds,2 which commonly ſignifie actively,3 and end in di, do, and dum, as, amandi *of loving*, amando *in loving*, amandum *to love*.

Alſo two Supines,2 the former in um, ſignifying actively:3 The latter in u, ſignifying paſſively, as, amatum *to love*, amatu *to be loved*.

TENSE.4

There be five Tenſes. The Preſent tenſe, the Preterimperfect, the Preterperfect, the Preterpluperfect, and the Future Tenſe.

The Preſent tenſe ſpeaketh of the time that now is, with theſe ſigns, *do*, *am*, as, amo *I do love*, amor *I am loved*.

The Preterimperfect 1 tenſe notes the time not perfectly paſt, with theſe ſigns, *did*, *was*, as, amabam *I did love*, amabar *I was loved*.

The Preterperfect tenſe notes the time perfectly paſt, with theſe ſigns, *have*, *have been*, as, amavi *I have loved*, amatus ſum vel fui *I have been loved*.

The Preterpluperfect tenſe notes the time long ſince paſt, with theſe ſigns, *had*, *had been*, as, amaveram *I had loved*, amatus eram *I had been loved*.

2 Note that although Gerunds and Supines have the ſame endings with a Noun; and have the places and ſigns of Caſes; [as, *Amandum eſt mihi* the Nominative, *ad amandum* the Accuſative, *amandi* the Genitive, *amando* the Ablative, *ſalvendo* the Dative, *amatum* the Accuſative, *amatu* the Ablative;] yet have they the ſignification of a Verb, and are often uſed for the Infinitive.

3 Gerunds and firſt Supines of Neutro-Paſſives ſignifie paſſively, as, *exulandum* to be baniſhed, *venum* to be ſold.

4 A Tenſe is an Accident of a Verb, which expreſſeth the time of its ſignifying.

1 This Tenſe ſpeaketh of the time paſt, without any limit of little or much; but withall denotes an action not yet finiſhed, as, *condebat Dido*, *Dido was a building*.

The Future tense 2 notes the time to come, with these signs, *shall* or *will*, as, amabo *I shall* or *will love.*

FIGURE.

Figure of a Verb is twofold. 1. Simple, as, facio. 2. Compound; 3 as, calefacio.

2 The Future tense of the Indicative is often put for the Imperative, as, *non occides, non furaberis.* The Future tense of the Potential hath the signification both of the Preterperfect and Future Tense. And is therefore called the Future exact. For there is much difference between, *cum cœnabo*, and *cum cœnavero:* The former signifying, *when I shall be at Supper:* the latter, *when I shall have supped.*

3 Verbs may be compounded, 1. With Nouns, as, *belligero.* 2. With Verbs, as, *calefacio.* 3. With Adverbs, as, *benefacio.* 4. With Prepositions, as, *advenio, conduco.*

Rules to direct the Changes in Compound Verbs.

1. These Verbs when they are compounded do change their first vowel into *e*, as, *damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, farcio, tracto, partio, carpo, patro, scando, mando-as, Spargo, halo, pario, capto, jacto, canto, cando, patior, gradior, & fatiscor.* So *pasco*, in *compesco* and *dispesco*; *juro* in *dejero* and *pejero*, and *audio* in *obedio:* But *ablacto, abarceo, pertracto, retracto, præspargo, effarcio, infarcio, exhalo, amando, præmando, demando, compatior, retrogradior*, and all other compounds of *pasco, juro*, and *audio*, keep the first vowel of the simple verb. *Impartio* and *dispartio* are also read; though *impertio* and *dispertio* be the more usual.

2. These change their first vowel into *i*, *habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo, cano, quæro, cædo, tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapio*; and *maneo* in these five, *præmineo, emineo, promineo, supereminеo*, and *immineo*; which five, with the compounds of *cano*, make their preterperfect tense in *ui*, as, *præminui, concinui, &c.* We have also *displiceo* of *placeo.* But *posthabeo, oblædo*, and the rest of the compounds of *placeo* and *maneo* keep the vowels of the simple verb.

3. These change the first vowel into *i*, in the Present tense, but not in the Preterperfect tense. *Ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango, capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, fateor* and *apiscor.* Also *facio* when compounded with a Preposition, as, *inficio*; *lego*, and *pango, pegi.* But with these Exceptions, 1. *Circumago, perago, satago, coemo, antecapio, depango, oppango, circumpango, repango, expango, relego, perlego, prælego, sublego, translego, allego*; and the compounds of *facio*

facio (except those with Prepositions) as, *olfacio, calfacio, benefacio, &c. circumsideo, supersideo,* and sometimes *superjacio*. These all keep the first vowel of their Present tense. 2. *Dego*, and *cago* of *ago* do not change the first vowel into *i*, but the former into *e*, the latter into *o*. 3. Two compounds of *rego*, *viz.* *pergo* and *surgo* do not change *re* into *ri*, like the other compounds of it, *erigo*, *corrigo*, *&c.* but leave it quite out in the Present tense; yet form their Preter tense like the rest, as, *perrexi*, *surrexi*. Note also that three compounds of *lego*, *intelligo*, *diligo*, *negligo*, make their Preterperfect tense in *lexi*: the rest have *legi*.

4. These two, *calco* and *salto*, change *a* into *u*; as, *inculco*, *resulto*. *Quatio* changeth *qua* into *cu*: as, *concutio*, *percutio*. *Plaudo* changeth *au* into *o* in these three, *displodo*, *explodo*, and *supplodo*; in other compounds it remains unchanged, as, *applaudo*, *complaudo*.

Here is to be noted, that for good sound sake divers verbs add to, take away, or change some letter of the Preposition, or other word wherewith they are compounded; of which changes amongst the Prepositions these are most general, *viz.*

Ab or *abs* before *f*, is made *au*, as, *aufero*. *Ad* before *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*. *s*, *t*. *Ob* before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*. *Sub* before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*. *In*, *con*, *per* before *l*, *m*, *r*. *Inter* and *ex* before *l*, sometimes before *f*, do change their last letter into the first consonant of the word following, as, *Accurro*, *opprimo*, *suggero*, *illudo*, *corrigo*, *pelluceo*, *intelligo*, *effero*. *In*, *con* before *b*, or *p*, change *n* into *m*, as, *imbibo*, *compono*. *Ad*, *ob*, *trans*, *dis* sometimes before a Consonant, and *con* always before a Vowel lose a letter, as, *aperio*, *omitto*, *trajicio*, *divello*, *coemo*. Some before a Vowel take *d*, *r*, as, *dirimo*, *prodigo*, *redeo*.

The English Verb hath often the particle compounding after it: as, *to go forth*, *exeo*; *to come together*, *convenio*; *to speak with*, *colloquor*; *to cast down*, *dejicio*, and such like.

It is also to be observed, that there are several compound Verbs, whose Simples are now in use, as, *defendo*, *offendo*, *aspicio*, *conspicio*, *adipiscor*, *experior*, *comperior*, *expedio*, *impedio*, *deleo*, *imbuo*, *compello*, *appello*, *incendo*, *accendo*, *ingero*, *congruo*, *instigo*, *instigo*, *impleo*, *compleo*, *induo*, *exuo*, *renideo*, *conniveo*, *allicio*, *illicio*, *obliviscor* and *percello*, with others of the like sort.

SPECIES.

The Species of a Verb is two fold. 1. Primitive, as, *ferveo*. 2. Derivative, as *ferveſco*.

There be five kinds of Derivatives.

1. Inchoatives, which end in *ſco*; and ſignifie *to begin to doe a thing*; as, *tepeſco*, *to begin to be warm*,

ſo calesco, ſterilesco. And if they come of a Deponent, they may end in ſcor; as, fruiſcor.

2. Frequentatives, which ſignifie *to doe a thing often*, and end in to, ſo, xo, co and tor, as, dicto, pulſo, vexo, vellico, ſector.

3. Deſideratives, ſignifying *to deſire*, or *to be about to doe a thing*, and end in urio, ae, parturio, lecturio, cœnaturio.

4. Diminutives, which leſſen the ſignification of the Primitives, and end in llo, ſſo, as ſorbillo, pitiſſo. And ſometimes in co; as, albico, candico.

5. Imitatives, which ſignifie to imitate one, and end in ſſo, and or, as, atticiſſo, patriſſo, pergræcor. 1 2

NUMBER.

VErbs have two Numbers, ſingular, as, lego; plural, as, legimus.

PERSON.

They have alſo three Perſons in either Number, diſtinguiſhed by ſeveral terminations, as, *Singulariter* amo, amas, amat. *Pluraliter* amamus, amatis, amant. Engliſh Verbs borrow their Perſons of the Pronoun; as, *I love, thou loveſt, he loveth*, &c.

CONJUGATION.3

VErbs have four Conjugations, known by their characteriſtical letters in this manner.

1 Note that ſuch Inchoatives as are derived of Nouns, and all Deſideratives [except *parturio* and *eſurio*,] do want the Preterperfect Tenſe. But Inchoatives formed from Verbs, have the Preterperfect tenſe of their Primitives; as, *tepeſco, tepui, à tepeo, &c.*

2 All Frequentatives, (except *viſo*,) all Diminutives and Imitatives are of the firſt Conjugation, Inchoatives of the third, Deſideratives of the fourth.

3 A Conjugation is a certain ſet of Terminations, by which a Verb is varied in all its Moods, Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons.

The

The first Conjugation hath ā long before re and ris, as, amāre, amāris.

The second Conjugation hath ē long before re and ris, as, monēre, monēris.

The third Conjugation hath ĕ short before re and ris, as, legĕre, legĕris.

The fourth Conjugation hath ī long before re and ris, as, audīre, audīris.

Verbs in O of the four Conjugations are declined and formed after these Examples.

AM-o, am-āre, am-avi, am-atum. *To love.*

Mon-eo, mon-ēre, mon-ui, mon-itum. *To warn.*

Leg-o, leg-ĕre, leg-i, lec-tum. *To read.*

Au-dio, aud-īre, aud-itum. *To hear.*

Indicative Mood Present Tense Singular.

I love, Thou lovest, He loveth, We love, Ye love, They love.
or, or, or, or, or, or,
do love, dost love. doth love. do love. do love. do love.

AMo, amas, amat.	Amamus, amatis, amant.
Moneo, mones, monet.	Monemus, monetis, monent.
Lego, legis, legit.	Legimus, legitis, legunt.
Audio, audis, audit.	Audimus, auditis, audiunt.

Preter-imperfect tense sing. { Amabam, Monebam, Legebam, Audiebam, } *I loved*, or *did love.* bas, bat. *Pl.* bamus, batis, (bant.

Preter-perfect tense sing. { Amavi, Monui, Legi, Audivi, } *I have loved.* isti, it. *Pl.* imus, istis, ērunt (vel ēre.

Preter-pluperfect tense sing. Amaveram, Monueram, Legeram, Audiveram. *I had loved.* ras, rat. *Pl.* ramus, ratis, rant.

Future tense sing. Amabo, Monebo, Legam, Audiam. *I shall or will love.* bis, bit. *Pl.* bimus, bitis, bunt. es, et. *Pl.* emus, etis, ent.

Imperative Mood.

Love thou, let him love; let us love, love ye, let them love.

Present tense sing.

Ama, amet, amato: amato.	*Pl.* amemus.	amate, ament, amatote: amanto.
Mone, moneat, moneto: moneto.	*Pl.* moneamus.	monete, moneant, monitote: monento.
Lege, legat, legito: legito.	*Pl.* legamus.	legite, legant, legitote: legunto.
Audi, audiat, audito: audito.	*Pl.* audiamus.	audite, audiant, auditote: audiunto.

Potential Mood.

I may or can love.

Present tense sing. Amem, ames, amet. *Pl.* amemus, ametis, ament. Moneam, Legam, Audiam, as, at. *Pl.* amus, atis, ant.

Preter-imperfect tense sing. Amarem, Monerem, Legerem, Audirem, *I might, would, should, ought or could love.* res, ret. *Pl.* remus, retis, rent.

Preter-perfect tense sing. Amaverim, Monuerim, Legerim, Audiverim, *I might, would, should or ought (to have loved.* ris, rit. *Pl.* rimus, ritis, rint.

Pre-

Preter-pluperfect tense sing. { Amaviſſem, Monuiſſem, Legiſſem, Audiviſſem, } *I might, would, should or ought (to had loved.* ſes, ſet. *Pl.* ſemus, ſetis, ſent.

Future tense sing. { Amavero, Monuero, Legero, Audivero, } *I may or can love hereafter.* ris, rit. *Pl.* rimus, ritis, rint.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent and Preterimp. tense sing. { Amare, Monere, Legere, Audire, } *To* { *Love. Warn. Read. Hear.*

Preterperf. and Preter-pluperfect tense. { Amaviſſe, Monuiſſe, Legiſſe, Audiviſſe, } *To have or had* { *Loved, Warned. Read. Heard.*

Future tense. { Amaturum. Moniturum, Lecturum, Auditurum, } eſſe, *To* { *Love, Warn, Read, Hear,* } *hereafter.*

Gerunds. { Aman-di, *of loving.* do, *in loving.* dum, *to love.* / Monen-di, *warning.* do, *warning.* dum, *warn.* / Legen-di, *reading.* do, *reading.* dum, *read.* / Audiendi, *hearing.* do, *hearing.* dum, *hear.*

Participle of the Preſent tense. { Amans, *loving.* Monens, *warning.* Legens, *reading.* Audiens, *hearing.*

Participle of the Future in rus. { Amaturus, *to love or about to love.* Moniturus, *to warn or about to warn.* Lecturus, *to read or about to read.* Auditurus, *to hear or about to hear.*

Verbs in or have not properly any Preterperfect, or Preterpluperfect, nor Future tense, but in the Indicative Moon. Yet these Tenses are supplied by the Participle of the Pretertens (variable

able by Genders and Numbers,) and the tenſes of Sum.

Therefore for the ſupplying of ſuch Tenſes as are lacking in Verbs in or, before we decline any of them we muſt learn to decline this Verb Sum, in this wiſe following;

Sum, es, fui, eſſe, futurus, *To be.*

Indicative Mood.

Preſent tenſe ſing.	SUm, *I am*; es, eſt. *Plural.* ſumus, eſtis, ſunt.	
Imperfect tenſe ſing.	Eram, *I was*; eras, erat. *Pl.* eramus, eratis, erant.	
Perfect tenſe ſing.	Fui, *I have been*; fuiſti, fuit. *Pl.* fuimus, fuiſtis, fuêrunt vel fuere.	
Pluperf. tenſe ſing.	Fueram, *I had been*; fueras, fuerat. *Pl.* fueramus, fueratis, fuerant.	
Future tenſe ſing.	Ero, *I ſhall or will be*; eris, erit. *Pl.* erimus, eritis, erunt.	

Imperative Mood.

Preſ tenſe ſing.	Sis,	*be thou,*	Sit,	*Pl.* Simus.	Sitis, Eſte, Eſtote, Sint, Sunto.
	Es,				
	Eſto,		Eſto,		

Potential Mood.

Preſent tenſe ſing.	Sim, *I may or can be*; ſis, ſit. *Pl.* ſimus, ſitis, ſint.
Imperfect tenſe ſing.	Eſſem, *I might or could be*; eſſes, eſſet. *Pl.* eſſemus, eſſetis, eſſent.
Perfect tenſe ſing.	Fuerim, *I might, could, ſhould, or ought to have been*; fueris, fuerit. *Pl.* fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.
Pluperf. tenſe ſing.	Fuiſſem, *I might, could, ſhould or ought to had been*; fuiſſes, fuiſſet. *Pl.* fuiſſemus, fuiſſetis, fuiſſent.
Future tenſe ſing.	Fuero, *I may or can be hereafter*; fueris, fuerit. *Pl.* fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

In-

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent and Imperf. tenſe	Eſſe, *To be*	*Perfect and Pluperfect tenſe.*	Fuiſſe,	*to have, or had been.*
Future tenſe.	Fore, vel futurum eſſe, *To be hereafter.*			

Verbs in OR *of the four Conjugations are declined after theſe Examples.*

AMor, amaris vel amare, amari, amatus ſum vel fui. *To be loved.*

Moneor, moneris vel monere, moneri, monitus ſum vel fui. *To be warned.*

Legor, legeris vel legere, legi, lectus ſum vel fui. *To be read.*

Audior, audiris vel audire, audiri, auditus ſum vel fui, *To be heard.*

In declining Verbs Deponent or Commune, it may be convenient for ſhewing their Active ſignification, to add a Gerund, and the firſt Supine, as,

Loquor, loqueris vel loquere, loqui, locutus ſum vel fui, loquendi, locutum. *To ſpeak.*

Sequor, ſequeris vel ſequere, ſequi, ſecutus ſum vel fui, ſequendi, ſecutum. *To follow.*

Indicative Mood.

I am loved.

Preſ. ſing.	Amor, amaris vel amare, amatur.	*Pluraliter,*	mur.
	Moneor, moneris vel monere, monetur.		mini.
	Legor, legeris vel legere, legitur.		ntur.
	Audior, audiris vel audire, auditur.		

Preter-imperfect tenſe ſing	Amabar, Monebar, Legebar, Audiebar,	*I was loved.* baris vel bare, batur. mur, bamini, bantur.	*Pl.* ba-

Pre-

Preterperfect tense sing. Amatus, Monitus, Lectus, Auditus — *I have been loved.* sum vel fui, tus es vel fuisti, tus est vel fuit. *Pl.* ti sumus vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti sunt, fuêrunt vel fuêre.

Preterpluperfect tense sing. Amatus, Monitus, Lectus, Auditus — *I had been loved.* eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat. *Pl.* ti eramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.

Future tense sing. Amabor, Monebor, Legar, Audiar — *I shall or will be loved.* beris vel bere, bitur. *Pl.* bimur, bimini, buntur. êris vel êre, êtur. *Pl.* êmur, êmini, entur.

Imperative Mood.

	Be thou loved,	*Let him be loved,*	*Let us be loved,*	*Be ye loved,*	*Let them be loved.*
Present tense singular.	Amare, amator:	ametur, amator.	*Pl.* amemur.	Amamini, amaminor:	amentur, amantor.
	Monere, monetor:	monetur, monetor.	*Pl.* monemur.	Monemini, moneminor:	moneantur, monentor.
	Legere, legitor:	legatur, legitor.	*Pl.* legamur.	Legimini, legiminor:	legantur, leguntor.
	Audire, auditor:	audiatur, auditor.	*Pl.* audiamur.	Audimini, audiminor:	audiantur, audiuntor.

Potential Mood.

I may or can be loved.

Present tense sing. Amer, Monear, Legar, Audiar — êris vel êre, etur. *Pl.* emur, emini, entur. aris vel are, atur. *Pl.* amur, amini, antur.

Preterimperfect tense sing. Amarer, Monerer, Legerer, Audirer — *I would, should or ought to be loved.* reris vel rere, retur. *Pl.* remur, remini, rentur.

Pre-

I would, ſhould, or *ought to have been loved.*

Preter-perfect tenſe ſing. Amatus, Monitus, Lectus, Auditus — im vel fuerim, is ſis vel fueris, is ſit vel fuerit. *Pl.* imus vel fuerimus, itis vel fueritis, int vel fuerint.

I would, ſhould, or *ought to had been loved.*

Preter-pluperfect tenſe ſing. Amatus, Monitus, Lectus, Auditus — eſſem vel fuiſſem, eſſes vel fuiſſes, eſſet vel fuiſſet. *Pl.* imus vel fuiſſemus, itis vel eſſetis vel fuiſſetis, int vel eſſent vel fuiſſent.

I may, or *can be loved hereafter.*

Future tenſe ſing. Amatus, Monitus, Lectus, Auditus — ero vel fuero, eris vel fueris, is erit vel fuerit. *Pl.* imus vel fuerimus, itis vel fueritis, int vel fuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent and Preterimperfect tenſe. Amari, *to be loved.* Moneri, *to be warned.* Legi, *to be read.* Audiri, *to be heard.*

Preterperfect and preterpluperfect tenſe. Amatum, Monitum, Lectum, Auditum — *To have or had been loved.* eſſe vel fuiſſe.

Future tenſe. Amatum iri, vel amandum eſſe, Monitum iri, vel monendum eſſe, Lectum iri, vel legendum eſſe, Auditum iri, vel audiendum eſſe, — *To be loved, warned, read, heard hereafter.*

Of certain Verbs going out of Rule, which are declined and formed in manner following.

POſſum, potes, potui, poſſe, potens. *To may,* or *can.*

Volo, vis, volui, velle, volens. *To will,* or *to be willing.*

Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle, nolens. *To nill,* or *to be unwilling.*

Malo, mavis, malui, malle, malens. *To have rather,* or *to be more willing.*

Edo,

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse, esum vel estum. *To eat.*

Fio, fis, factus sum vel fui, fieri, factus, faciendus. *To be made, to become,* or *to be done.*

Fero, fers, tuli, ferre, latum. *To bear* or *suffer.*

Feror, ferris vel ferre, latus sum vel fui, ferri, latus, ferendus. *To be born* or *suffered.*

Indicative Mood.

Present tense singular.

- Possum, potes, potest.
- Volo, vis, vult.
- Nolo, nonvis, nonvult.
- Malo, mavis, mavult.
- Edo, edis vel es, edit vel (est.
- Fio, fis, fit.
- Fero, fers, fert. (tur.
- Feror, ferris vel ferre, fer-

Pluraliter.

- Possumus, potestis, possunt.
- Volumus, vultis, volunt.
- Nolumus, nonvultis, nolunt.
- Malumus, mavultis, malunt.
- Edimus, editis vel estis, e- (dunt.
- Fimus, fitis, fiunt.
- Ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
- Ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

Preterimperfect tense singular.

- Poteram,
- Volebam,
- Nolebam,
- Malebam,
- Edebam,
- Fiebam,
- Ferebam,

as, at. *Pl.* amus, atis, ant.

- Ferebar, baris vel bare, batur. *Pl.* bamur, bamini, (bantur.

Preterperfect tense sing.

- Potui,
- Volui,
- Nolui,
- Malui,
- Edi,
- Tuli,

isti, it. *Pl.* imus, istis, êrunt vel (êre.

- Factus
- Latus

Pl. ti sumus vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti sunt, fuêrunt vel fuêre. (sum vel fui, tus es vel fuisti, est vel fuit.

Preterpluperfect tense sing.

- Potueram,
- Volueram,
- Nolueram,
- Malueram
- Ederam,
- Tuleram,

ras, rat. *Pl.* ramus, ratis, (rant.

- Factus
- Latus

eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat. *Pl.* ti eramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.

Future tense sing.
- Potero, eris, erit. *Pl.* erimus, eritis, erint.
- Volam, Edam, / Nolam, Fiam, / Malam, Feram, } es, et. *Pl.* emus, etis, ent.
- Ferar, ferêris vel êre, êtur. *Pl.* emur, emini, entur.

Possum, Volo, Malo, have no Imperative Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Present tense sing.
- Noli, nolito: *Pl.* Nolite, nolitote.
- Es, esto: edat, / ede, esto, / edito: edito. } *Pl.* Edamus. { edite, este, estote, editote: } edant, edunto.
- Fito tu: fiat, / fito. } *Pl.* Fiamus. { fite, fitote: } fiant, fiunto.
- Fer, ferto: ferat, ferto. } *Pl.* Feramus. { ferte, fertote: } ferant, ferunto.
- Ferre, fertor: feratur, fertor. } *Pl.* Feramur. { ferimini, feriminor: } ferantur, feruntor.

Potential Mood.

Present tense sing.
- Possim, Malim, / Velim, Nolim, } is, it. *Pl.* imus, itis, int.
- Edam, / Fiam, / Feram, } as, at. *Pl.* amus, atis, ant.
- Ferar, aris vel are, atur. *Pl.* amur, amini, antur.

Preterimperfect tense sing.
- Possem, Ederem / Vellem, vel essem, / Nollem, Fierem, / Mallem, Ferrem, } es, et. *Pl.* emus, etis, ent.
- Ferrer, reris vel rere, retur. *Pl.* remur, remini, rentur.

Preterperfect tense singular.
- Potuerim, Maluerim, / Voluerim, Ederim, / Noluerim, Tulerim, } is, it. *Pl.* imus, itis, int.
- Factus / Latus sim vel fuerim, tus sis vel fueris, tus sit vel fuerit. *Pl.* ti simus vel fuerimus, ti sitis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fuerint.

Preter-

Preter-pluperfect tense sing.
Potuiſſem, Voluiſſem, Noluiſſem, | Maluiſſem, Ediſſem, Tuliſſem, } ſes, ſet. *Pl.* ſemus, ſetis, ſent.
Factus, Latus { eſſem vel fuiſſem, tus eſſes vel fuiſſes, tus eſſet vel fuiſſet. *Pl.* ti eſſemus vel fuiſſemus, ti eſſetis vel fuiſſetis, ti eſſent vel fuiſſent.

Future tense sing.
Potuero, Voluero, Noluero, | Maluero, Edero, Tulero, } ris, rit. *Pl.* rimus, ritis, rint.
Factus, Latus { ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus erit vel fuerit. *Pl.* ti erimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent & preterimperfect tenſe.
Poſſe. Velle. Nolle. Malle. Edere vel eſſe. Ferre. Fieri. Ferri.

Preterperfect & preterpluperfect tenſe.
Potuiſſe. Voluiſſe. Noluiſſe. Maluiſſe. Ediſſe. Tuliſſe. Factum eſſe vel fuiſſe. Latum eſſe vel fuiſſe.

Future tenſe.
Eſurum eſſe, Laturum eſſe, | Factum iri, vel faciendum eſſe. Latum iri, vel ferendum eſſe.

Eo and queo, with their Compounds, are likewiſe irregular, making in the Indicative, Preſ. pl. eunt, queunt, Preterimperfect ibam and quibam, &c. Future ibo and quibo, &c. (and ſometimes iam in the Compounds.) Potent. Preſ. eam, queam, &c. Gerunds eundi, eundo, eundum, queundi, queundo, queundum. The Oblique caſes of the Particip. preſent euntis, eunti, euntem, &c. Only ambio varies not from audio.

A Ta-

A Table of the Conjugations of the Active Voice.

	Indicative.	Imperat.	Potential.	Infinitive.
Preſent.	1. Am-o.	7 am-a.	2. am-em.	am-are.
Imperfect.	1. am-abam.	am-ato.	2. am-arem.	
Preterperf.	5. am-avi.		6. am-averim.	am-aviſſe.
Preterplu.	1. am-averam.		2. am-aviſſem.	
Future.	3. am-abo.		6. am-avero.	am-aturum eſſe.
Preſent.	2. Moneo.	8 mon-e.	1. mon-eam.	mon-ere.
Imperfect.	1. mon-ebam.	mon-eto.	2. mon-erem.	
Preterperf.	5. mon-ui.		6. mon-uerim.	mon-uiſſe.
Preterplu.	1. mon-ueram.		2. mon-uiſſem.	
Future.	3. mon-ebo.		6. mon-uero.	mo-niturum eſſe.
Preſent.	3. Leg-o.	9 leg-e.	1. leg-am.	leg-ere.
Imperfect.	1. leg-ebam.	leg-ito.	2. leg-erem.	
Preterperf.	5. leg-i.		6. leg-erim.	leg-iſſe.
Preterplu.	1. leg-eram.		2. leg-iſſem.	
Future.	2. leg-am.		6. leg-ero.	lect-urum eſſe.
Preſent.	4. Aud-io.	10 aud-i.	1. aud-iam.	aud-ire.
Imperfect.	1. aud-iebam.	aud-ito.	2. aud-irem.	
Preterperf.	5. aud-ivi.		6. aud-iverim.	aud-iviſſe.
Preterplu.	1. aud-iveram.		2. aud-iviſſem.	
Future.	2. aud-iam.		6. aud-ivero.	aud-iturum eſſe.

Con.	Gerunds.	Supines.	Participles. *Pref.* *Fut.*
1. C.	Am-andi-ando-andum.	am-atum-atu.	am-ans—aturus.
2. C.	Mon-endi-endo-endum.	mon-itum-itu.	mon-ens-iturus.
3. C.	Leg endi-endo-endum.	lec-tum-tu.	leg-ens—lecturus.
4 C	Aud-iendi-iendo-iendum	aud-itum-itu.	aud-iens-iturus.

The ſeveral Perſons of the Active Voice.

	Sing. 1. I.	2. Thou.	3. He.	Pl. 1 We.	2. Ye.	3. They.
1	o, am.	as.	at.	amus.	atis.	ant.
2	eo, am, em,	es	et.	emus.	etis.	ent.
3	o.	is.	it.	imus.	itis.	unt.
4	io.	is.	it.	imus.	itis.	iunt.
5	i.	iſti	it.	imus.	iſtis.	ërunt vel ëre.
6	im, o.	is.	it.	imus.	itis.	iut.
7		a, ato.	et, ato.	emus.	ate, atote.	ent, anto.
8		e, eto	eat, eto.	eamus.	ete, etote.	eant, ento.
9		e, ito.	at, ito.	amus.	ite, itote.	ant, unto.
10		i, ito.	iat ito.	iamus.	ite, itote.	ſant, iunto.

N. B. Verbs of the third Conjugation of the Active Voice in *io*, and of the Paſſive Voice in *ior*, follow the form of the fourth, in theſe. Ind. pref. *iunt*, *iuntur*. imperf. *iebam*, *iebar*, &c. fut. *iam*, *iar*, &c. Imper. *iunto*, *iuntor*. Pot. *iam*, &c. *iar*, &c. Ger. *iendi-endum*. Part. *iens*, *iturus*, as, *Cupio*, *cupiunt*, *cupiebam*, *cupiam*, &c.

A Ta-

A Table of the Conjugations of the Paſſive Voice.

	Indicative	Imperative.	Potential.	Infinitive.	Participle.
Preſent.	1. Am-or.	5 am-are.	2. am-er.	am-ari.	am-atus.
Imperf.	1. am-abar.	am-ator.	2. am-arer.		
Future.	3. am-abor.			am-atum iri.	am-andus.
Preſent,	2. Mon-eor.	6 mon-ere.	1. mon-ear.	mon-eri.	mon-itus.
Imperf.	1. mon-ebar.	mon-etor.	2. mon-erer.		
Future.	3. mon-ebor.			mon-itum iri.	mon-endus.
Preſent.	3. Le-gor.	7 leg-ere.	1. leg-ar.	leg-i.	lec-tus.
Imperf.	1. leg-ebar.	leg-itor.	2. leg-erer.		
Future.	2. leg-ar.			lec-tum iri.	leg-endus.
Preſent.	4. Aud-ior.	8 aud-ire.	1. aud-iar.	aud-iri.	aud-itus.
Imperf.	1. aud-iebar.	aud-itor.	2 aud-irer.		
Future.	2. aud-iar.			aud-itum iri.	aud-iendus.

The Tenſes here wanting are to be ſupplied by the Tenſes of *ſum*, and the Participle *Preter*, thus:

1. Amatus, 2. Monitus, 3. Lectus, 4. Auditus.

Preterperf.	Indicat.	tum vel fui.	Potent.	ſim vel fuerim.	Infinit. { eſſe
Preterplu.		eram vel fueram.		eſſem vel fuiſſem.	vel
Future.				ero vel fuero.	fuiſſe.

The ſeveral Perſons of the Paſſive Voice.

Singulariter,	1 aris vel are.	atur.	Pluraliter,	amur.	amini.	antur.
	2 ēris vel ēre.	etur.		emur.	emini.	entur.
	3 ĕris vel ĕre.	itur.		imur.	imini.	untur.
	4 iris vel ire.	itur.		imur.	imini.	iuntur.
	5 are ator.	etur, ator.		emur.	amini aminor.	entur antur.
	6 ēre ētor.	eatur, etor.		eamur.	emini eminor.	eantur entur.
	7 ĕre ĕtor.	atur, itor.		amur.	imini iminor.	antur untor.
	8 ire itor.	iatur, itor.		iamur.	imini iminor.	iantur iuntor.

Here note, that [am, art, is, are, was, were, be and been] when they come before a Verb, are ſigns of the Paſſive Voice.

Rules

Rules for forming the Preterperfect Tenſes and Supines of Verbs 1.

The Firſt Conjugation.

VErbs in o of the firſt conjugation make their Preterperfect tenſe in avi, and the Supine in atum, as, Am-o,-avi,-atum. Pot-o,-avi,-atum, & um per Syncop.

Except theſe Verbs following which form their Preterperfect Tenſe and Supines in this ſort.

Crep-o -ui -itum.

2 C { in- dif- } -crep-o. { -ui, & -avi. -itum & -atum.

Cub o -ui -itum.

Do dedi datum.

C { circum- peſſun- ſatis- venun- } do-dedi-datum.

The reſt of its compounds are of the third Conjugation.

Dom-o -ui -itum.

Fric-o -ui -tum.

Juv-o -vi -tum.

Labo *caret, caret.*

Lavo lavi { lavatum. lautum. lotum.

Mic-o-ui, *caret.*

dimic-o { -ui 3 -avi } -atum.

Neco, *regular in the perfect tenſes, if read in them.*

C nec-o -ui -tum.

Plico *is ſeldom uſed in any tenſes except thoſe formed of the preſent.*

C { ap- com- ex- im- } plic-o { ui & avi } { itū, & atū.

the reſt of its Comp. avi-atum.

Sec-o -ui -tum.

Son-o -ui 4 -itum.

Sto ſteti ſtatum.

C ſto ſtiti { -ſtitum. -ſtatum.

1 Here note, that in theſe Tables of Verbs are mentioned all ſuch as have any irregularity or defect, either in the Perfect Tenſe or Supine; or any change by reaſon of Compoſition; but where the Verb is regular, or the Compound hath altogether the ſame declining with the Simple, there is no mention made of ſuch.

2 Alſo note that C ſet before a word, denotes the foregoing Verb to be ſo formed in Compoſition, as, C *-ſto -ſtiti -ſtitum*, ſhews that the Compounds of *ſto* do form *ſtiti*, &c. as, *præ-ſto -ſtiti -ſtitum & -ſtatum.*

3 *ui* rarely; *avi* uſually.

4 *Reſono* hath frequently *reſonavi.*

† *Damno, lacto, ſacro, patro, tracto,* being compounded, change *a* into *e*; *caleo* and *ſalto* change *a* into *u*; ſee the Figure of a Verb, Note 1.

Except circumſto -ſteti. | Vet-o -ui -itum.
Ton-o -ui -itum.

The Second Conjugation.

VErbs in eo 1, of the Second Conjugation make their Preterperfect tenſe in ui, and their Supine in itum, as,

Mon-eo mon-ui mon-itum.

Except theſe Verbs following, which make their Preterperfect tenſe or Supine otherwiſe.

Al-geo -ſi, *caret.*
Arceo arcui † arcitum.
C -erceo -ercui -ercitum.
Ardeo arſi arſum.
Augeo auxi auctum.
Caveo cavi cautum.
Cen-ſeo -ſui -ſum.
Cieo cievi citum.
C conni-veo. { -vi *uſually*, xi *rarely*, } *caret.*
C Deleo del-evi -etum.
Doceo docui doctum.
Egeo egui, *caret.*
C ind-igeo -igui, *caret.*
Faveo favi fautum.
Ferveo { vi. vui. } *caret.*
Fleo flevi fletum.
Foveo fovi fotum
Frigeo frixi, *caret.*
Frendeo frendi freſſum.
Fulgeo fulſi, *caret.*
Hæreo hæſi hæſum.
Habeo *is regular but in its Compounds changes* a *into* i, *except* poſthabeo.
Indulgeo indulſi indultum.
Jubeo juſſi juſſum.
Langueo langui, *caret.*
Leo, *obſolete*, vide deleo.
Liqueo licui, *caret.*
Luceo luxi, *caret.*
Lugeo luxi luctum.
Maneo manſi manſum.
C { e- im- præ- pro- ſupere- } -mineo-minui, *carent.*
The reſt of its compounds follow the ſimple Verb, as,
per-man-eo -ſi -ſum.
Miſceo miſcui miſtum.
Mordeo momordi morſum.
C -mordeo -mordi -morſum.
Moveo movi motum.
Mulceo mulſi mulſum.

1 Here note that not all Verbs in *eo* are of the ſecond Conjugation, for *beo, creo, ſcreo, meo, calceo, laqueo, nauſeo, & enucleo*, and their Comp. are of the firſt. *Eo* and *Queo*, and their Comp. of the fourth.

Mul-

Mulgeo {-ſi -xi} mulctum,
Neo nevi netum.
Oleo, *with its Compounds, regular, except.*
ab- per- ex- obſ- ad- in- oleo olevi olitum.
ex- obſ- oleo olevi oletum.
ad- in- oleo- olevi {adultum. *caret.*
Pateo patui, *caret.*
Paveo pavi, *caret.*
Pendeo pependi, *caret.*
C -pendeo -pendi, *caret.*
C -pleo -plevi -pletum.
Prandeo prandi pranſum.
Rideo riſi riſum.
Sedeo ſedi ſeſſum.
C -ſideo -ſedi -ſeſſum.
Exc. circumſedeo & ſuperſedeo.
Sorbeo ſorbui ſorptum.
C-abſor- beo- {bui & pſi.} abſorptum.
Spondeo ſpoſpondi ſponſum.
C -ſpondeo -ſpondi -ſponſum.
Strideo ſtridi, *caret.*
Suadeo ſuaſi ſuaſum.
Teneo tenui tentum.
C -tineo -tinui -tentum.
Exc. attineo pertineo abſtineo, *which want their Supines.*
Tergeo terſi terſum.
Timeo timui, *caret.*
Tondeo totondi tonſum.
C -tondeo -tondi -tonſum.
Torqueo torſi tortum.
Torreo torrui toſtum.
Turgeo turſi, *caret.*
Video viſi viſum.
Veio vievi vietum.
Voveo vovi votum.
Urgeo urſi, *caret.*

Irregular Impersonals.

Libet libuit & libitum eſt.
Licet licuit & licitum eſt.
Miſeret miſertum eſt.
Pertædet pertæduit & pertæſum eſt.
Piget piguit & pigitum eſt.
Pudet puduit & puditum eſt.

Theſe Verbs Neuter-Paſſives have a Preterperfect Tenſe of the Paſſive form.

Audeo auſus ſum.
Gaudeo gaviſus ſum.
Mœreo mœſtus ſum.
Soleo ſolitus ſum.

Note that all Verbs Neuter making their Preterperfect tenſes regularly in ui, do want their Supines: Except theſe following, caleo, careo, doleo, lateo, noceo, oleo, pareo, placeo, laceo, and valeo, [whereof lateo, placeo, and taceo, when they are compounded, change the firſt vowel into i; as, dilateo, diſpliceo; but complaceo, perplaceo, beneplaceo, keep the form of the ſimple Verb.

Theſe want both Perfect tenſes and Supines.

aveo, denſeo, glabreo, liveo, renideo.
clueo, flaveo, liquet, polleo.

The Third Conjugation.

VErbs in o of the third Conjugation make their Preterperfect tenſe in i, and the Supine in tum, as, Ic-o ic-i ſc-tum, Leg-o leg-i lec-tum.

Note that moſt Verbs of this Conjugation are irregular; here is therefore ſet down the Perfect tenſes and Supines of all the Simple Verbs thereof, and ſo many Compounds as any way differ from their Simples.

Bo.

Bibo bibi bibitum.
Cumbo cubui cubitum.
Glubo, { glubi glubitum. / glupſi gluptum.
Lambo lambi, *caret.*
Nubo nupſi nuptum.
Scabo ſcabi, *caret.*
Scribo ſcripſi ſcriptum.

Co.

Dico dixi dictum.
Duco duxi ductum.
Par- { peperci parcitum. / co { parſi parſum.
Vinco vici victum.

Sco.

Creſco crevi cretum.
Diſco didici, *caret.*
Pariſco, *caret, caret.*
Gliſco, *caret, caret.*
Hiſco, *caret, caret.*
Noſco novi notum.
ag- } noſco novi notum.
cog- }
Paſco pavi paſtum.
com- } peſco -peſcui -peſci-
diſ- } tum.
Poſco popoſci, *caret.*
Quieſco quievi quietum.
Sciſco ſcivi ſcitum.
Sueſco ſuevi ſuetum.

Here note that Inceptives in ſco, *which come of nouns, want the preterperfect tenſe, as,* diteſco, pueraſco, &c. *But theſe which come of Verbs, borrow, when it is needfull, a perfect tenſe of their primitives, as,* tepeſco, tepui, à tepeo, &c.

Do.

Cado cecidi caſum.
C -cido -cidi, *caret.*
Exc. { oc- / re- } cido cidi caſum.
Cædo cecidi cæſum.
C -cido -cidi -ciſum.
Candeo, *obſolete.*
C -cendo -cendi -cenſum.
Cedo ceſſi ceſſum.

Clau-

Claudo clauſi clauſum.
Cludo cluſi cluſum.
Cudo cuſi cuſum.
Divido diviſi diviſum.

The Comp. of Do *of this Conjug. are thus formed.*

-do -didi -ditum, *as,*
condo condidi conditum.
Exc. abſcondo -di -ditum,
Edo edi eſum.
Fendo, *obſolete.*
C- fendo fendi fenſum.
Fido fiſus ſum.
Findo fidi fiſſum.
Frendo frendi freſſum.
Fundo fudi fuſum.
Lædo læſi læſum.
C -lido -liſi -liſum.
Ludo luſi luſum.
Mando manſi manſum.
Pando pandi { paſſum. panſum.
Pedo pepedi peditum.
C -pedo -pedi -peditum.
Pendo pependi penſum.
C -pendo -pendi -penſum.
Plaudo plauſi plauſum.
C { diſ- ex- ſup- } -plodo -ploſi -ploſū.
Prehen-do -di -ſum.
Rado raſi raſum.
Rodo roſi roſum.
Rudo rudi, *caret.*
Scando ſcanſi ſcanſum.
C -ſcendo -ſcendi -ſcenſum.
Scindo ſcidi ſciſſum.
Sido ſedi, *caret.*
Stridio ſtridi, *caret.*
Tendo tetendi { tenſum. tentum.
C -tendo -tendi { tenſum. tentum.
Trudo -truſi -truſum.
Tundo tutudi { tunſum. tuſum.
C -tundo -tudi { tunſum. tuſum.
Vado vaſi vaſum.

Go.

Ago egi actum.
C -igo -egi -actum.
Except { per-ago -egi -actum. circum-ago -egi -actum. ſat-ago -egi, *caret.* ambigo, *caret.* cogo coegi coactum. dego degi, *caret.* prodigo egi, *caret.*
Ango anxi, *caret.*
Cingo cinxi cinctum.
Clango clanxi, *caret.*
Figo fixi { fixum. fictum.
Fingo finxi fictum.
C -fligo -flixi -flictum.
Frango fregi fractum.
C -fringo -fregi -fractum.
Frigo frixi { frictum. frixum.
Fungo funxi functum.
Lego legi lectum.
C -ligo -legi -lectum.
Exc. { allego, perlego, prælego, ſublego, tranſlego, *follow the ſimple.* di- intel- neg- { ligo -lexi -lectum.
Linto linxi -linctum.
Mergo merſi merſum.

Mingo *vide* meio.
Mungo munxi munctum.
Ningo ninxi, *caret.*
Pago pepigi pactum.
Pango panxi pactum.
C -pingo -pegi -pactum.
Exc. { circum- / de- / ex- / ap- / re- } pango pegi pactum.
Pingo Pinxi pictum.
Plango planxi planctum.
Pungo { pupugi / punxi } punctum.
C -pungo -punxi -punctum.
Exc. re- pungo { pupugi / punxi } punctum
Rego rexi rectum.
C -rigo -rexi -rectum.
Exc. { per-go / ſur-go } -rexi -rectum.
Spargo ſparſi ſparſum.
C -ſtinguo -ſtinxi -ſtinctum.
Stringo ſtrinxi ſtrictum.
Sugo ſuxi ſuctum.
Tango tetigi tactum.
C -tingo -tigi -tactum.
Tego texi tectum.
Tergo terſi terſum.
Tingo tinxi tinctum.
Vergo, *caret*, *caret.*
Ungo unxi unctum.

Ho.

Traho traxi tractum.
Veho vexi vectum.

Lo.

Alo alui { alitum. / altum. }
Cello *is antiquated.*
C { antecello -cellui, *caret.* / ex- / præ- } -cello -cellui -celſum. / percello-perculi-perculsū. / recello, *caret*, *caret.*
Colo colui cultum.
Conſul-o -ui -tum.
Fallo fefelli falſum.
C refello refelli, *caret.*
Malo malui, *caret.*
Molo molui molitum.
Nolo nolui, *caret.*
Occul-o -ui -tum.
Pello pepuli pulſum.
C -pello -puli -pulſum.
Pſallo pſalli, *caret.*
Sallo ſalli ſalſum.
Tollo ſuſtuli ſublatum.
C { extollo extuli elatum. / attollo, *caret*, *caret.*
Vello { velli / vulſi } vulſum
Volo volui, *caret.*

Mo.

Como compſi comptum.
Demo dempſi demptum.
Emo emi emptum.
C -imo -emi -emptum.
Exc. coemo coemi coemptum.
Fremo fremui fremitum.
Gemo gemui gemitum.
Premo preſſi preſſum.
C -primo -preſſi -preſſum.
Promo prompſi promptum.
Sumo ſumpſi ſumptum.
Tremo tremui, *caret.*
Vomo vomui vomitum.

No

No.

Cano cecini cantum.
C -cini -cinui -centum.
Cerno crevi cretum.
Gigno genui genitum.
Lino levi litum.
Pono poſui poſitum.
Sino ſivi ſitum.
Sperno ſprevi ſpretum.
Sterno ſtravi ſtratum.
Temno tempſi temptum.

Po.

Carpo carpſi carptum.
C -cerpo -cerpſi -cerptum.
Repo repſi reptum.
Rumpo rupi ruptum.
Scalpo ſcalpſi ſcalptum.
Serpo ſerpſi ſerptum.
Strepo ſtrepui ſtrepitum.

Quo.

Coquo coxi coctum.
C -linquo -liqui -lictum.

Ro.

Curro cucurri curſum.
C -curro -curri -curſum.
Ex-, De-, Præ-, Prò- } carro { curri, cucurri } curſum.
Fero tuli latum.
Furo inſanivi inſanitum.
Gero geſſi geſtum.
Quæro quæſivi quæſitum.
C -quiro quiſivi quiſitum.
Sero *a* ſevi ſatum. a *to plant.*
Sero ſevi ſitum.
Sero *b* ſerui ſertum. b *to Lay*
Tero trivi tritum. *in order.*
Verro verri verſum.
Uro uſſi uſtum.

So.

Arceſ-ſo -ſivi -ſitum.
Capeſſo { -ſivi, -ſi } -ſitum.
Depſo depſui depſitum.
Faceſſo { -ſivi, -ſi } ſitum.
Inceſſo { ſivi, ſi } *caret.*
Laceſſo ſivi ſitum.
Pinſo pinſui { pinſitum, pinſum, piſtum. }
Viſo viſi viſum.

To.

Flecto flexi flexum.
Meto meſſui meſſum.
Mitto miſi miſſum.
Necto { nexi, nexui } nexum.
Pecto { pexi, pexui } pexum
Peto petivi petitum.
Plecto { plexi, plexui } plexum.
Siſto ſtiti ſtatum.
C -ſiſto ſtiti, *caret.*
Sterto ſtertui, *caret.*
Verto verti verſum.

Vo.

Solvo ſolvi ſolutum.
Vivo vixi victum.
Volvo volvi volutum.

Xo.

Texo texui textum.

O pure.

Acuo acui acutum.
Annuo annui, *caret.*
Arguo argui argutum.
Capio cepi captum.
C -cipio -cepi -ceptum.
Cupio cupivi cupitum.
Exuo exui exutum.
Facio feci factum.
C -ficio -feci -fectum.

Flocci -nauci -fatis -bene -male -frigi -cal -ol -compendi -commone -facio, *follow the ſimple Verb.*

Fluo fluxi fluxum.
Fodio fodi foſſum.
Fugio fugi fugitum.
Gruo grui, *caret.*
Jacio jeci jactum.
C -jicio jeci jectum.
Imbuo imbui imbutum.
Induo indui indutum.
Lacio, *obſolete.*
C -licio -lexi lectum.
Exc. elicio elicui elicitum.
Luo lui luitum.
C -luo lui luitum.
Meio minxi mictum.
Metuo metui, *caret.*
Minuo minui minutum.
Pario peperi partum.

Its compounds are of the fourth Conjugation.

Pluo { plui / pluvi } plutum.
Quatio quaſſi quaſſum.
C -cutio -cuſſi -cuſſum.
Rapio rapui raptum.
C -ripio -ripui -reptum.
Renuo renui, *caret.*
Reſpuo reſpui, *caret.*
Ruo rui { ruitum. / rutum. }
Sapio { ſapui / ſapivi } *caret.*
C -ſipio ſipui, *caret.*
Specio, *antiquated.*
C -ſpicio -ſpexi -ſpectum.
Spuo ſpui ſputum.
C -ſpuo -ſpui, *caret.*
Statuo ſtatui ſtatutum.
C -ſtituo -ſtitui -ſtatutum.
Sternuo ſternui ſternutum.
Struo ſtruxi ſtructum.
Suo ſui ſutum.
Tribuo tribui tributum.

The Fourth Conjugation.

VErbs in io [1] are of the fourth Conjugation, and make their Preterperfect Tenſe in ivi, and the Supine in itum, as,

Aud-io aud-ivi aud-itum.

1 Note that all Verbs in *io* are of the fourth Conjugation, except theſe of the firſt; *glacio, emacio, ſocio, cructo, faucio, calcio, nuncio, faſcio, calamidio, radio, hio, retalio, ſpolio, amplio, lamio, ſomnio, pio, ſtrio, vario, decurio, centurio, ſuccenturio, furio, baſio, ſatio, vitio*; and theſe of the third, *capio, facio, jacio, lacio, ſpecio, fodio, fugio, cupio, rapio, ſapio, pario* and *quatio*, with their compounds.

Except theſe following.

Amicio { amicui / amixi / amicivi } amictum.
Farcio farſi fartum.
C -fercio -ferſi -fertum.
Ferio percuſſi percuſſum.
Fio factus ſum.
Fulcio fulſi fultum.
Geſtio geſtivi, *caret.*
Haurio hauſi hauſtum.
Pario, *is of the third Conjugation, but its Compound of the fourth thus formed.*
C -perio -perui -pertum.
Exc. { com- / re- } -perio -peri -pertum.
Raucio rauſi rauſum.

Salio { ſalii / ſalui } ſaltum
C -ſilio { -ſilii / -ſilui } -ſultum.
Exc. { ab- / pro- } ſilio -ſilui, *caret.*
Sancio { ſanxi ſanctum. / ſancivi ſancitum. }
Sarcio ſarſi ſartum.
Sentio ſenſi ſenſum.
Sepelio ſepelivi ſepultum.
Sepio ſepſi ſeptum.
Singul-tio -tivi -tum.
Veneo venivi venum.
Venio veni ventum.
Vincio vinxi vinctum.

The Preterperfect Tenſes of Verbs in Or.

VErbs in or have no regular Preterperfect tenſe of their own; to ſupply which defect they have a borrowed Perfect Tenſe made up of the Participle of the Preter tenſe and the Verb ſum or fui, as,

Amatus ſum vel fui.
Monitus ſum vel fui.
Lectus ſum vel fui.
Auditus ſum vel fui.

Except theſe following which are formed irregularly.

Of the Second Conjugation.

Fateor faſſus ſum.
C -fiteor feſſus ſum.
Medeor medicatus ſum.
Miſereor miſertus ſum.
Reor ratus ſum.

Of the Third Conjugation.

Apiſcor aptus ſum.
C { ad- / in- } ipiſcor -eptus ſum.
Amplector amplexus ſum.
Complector complexus ſum.
Comminiſcor commentus ſum.
Exper-giſcor -rectus ſum.

Fa-

Fatiſcor, *obſolete.*
C -defetiſcor -defeſſus ſum.
Fruor fructus fruitus ſum.
Fungor functus ſum.
Gradior greſſus ſum.
C -gredior -greſſus ſum.
Iraſcor iratus ſum.
Labor lapſus ſum.
Liquor liquefactus ſum.
Loquor locutus ſum.
Medeor medicatus ſum.
Morior mortuus ſum.
Nanciſcor nactus ſum.
Naſcor natus ſum.
Nitor niſus nixus ſum.
Obliviſcor oblitus ſum.
Ordior orſus ſum.
Orior ortus ſum.
Paciſcor pactus ſum.
Patior paſſus ſum.
Potior potitus ſum.
Proficiſcor profectus ſum.
Queror queſtus ſum.
Reminiſcor recordatus ſum.
Revertor reverſus ſum & reverti.
Ringor, *caret.*
Sequor ſecutus ſum.
Tuor tuitus ſum.
Veſcor paſtus ſum.
Ulciſcor ultus ſum.
Utor uſus ſum.

Of the Fourth Conjugation.

Aſſentior aſſenſus ſum.
Experior expertus ſum.
Operior opertus ſum.
Metior menſus ſum.
Ordior orſus ſum.

Note that thoſe Paſſives want their Preterperfect Tenſes which are formed from Actives that have no Supines.

Of Defective Verbs.

Such Verbs as are uſed in a few Tenſes or perſons onely, are called Defectives, and be theſe which follow.

Indic. præſ. Aio ais ait. pl. aiunt.
Imperf. aiebam aie-bas-bat. pl. bamus batis bant.
Imperat. ai. Potent. aias aiat. pl. aiatis aiant.
Partic. aiens, *to ſay.*
Imperat. Apage. Pl. apagite, [from the Greeks.
Potent. præſ. Auſim auſis auſit. pl. auſint.
Imperat. Ave aveto. pl. avete avetote. Inf. avere.
Impera. Cedo. pl. cedite, pro porrige, &c.
Fut. Faxo vel fax-im -is -it. pl. faxint.
Potent. imperf. Fo-rem -res -ret. pl. forent.

Indic.

Indic. præs. Quæso. pl. quæsumus.
Indic. præs. Infit. Do Defit. fut. defiet. Pot. defiat.
Indic. præs. Inquam inquis inquit. pl. inquimus inquiunt.
Imperf. inquiebat. pl. inquiebant.
Perfect. Inquisti. fut. inquies inquiet. Imp. inque inquito.
Indic. præs. Ovat. Particip. ovans.

Odi, cœpi, memini, have all the Tenses formed from the perfect tense, but the signification of the present, as, Memini *I remember*; which hath in the Imperative memento mementote.

Dor, furo, for, der, fer à for & sci are not to be used but in Composition. Dic, duc, fer, fac are used for dice, duce, fere, face.

Verbs Impersonals.

IMpersonals are such Verbs that are seldom used in any other but the third person singular onely, in which person they are declined throughout all Moods and Tenses, and are commonly known in English by this sign *it*1, as, *It becometh*, Decet, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, decere. *It delighteth*, Delectat, delectabat, delectavit, &c. Also in like manner of Verbs in or; as, Studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studitum erat vel fuerat, studebitur2.

But these are irregular in the Praterperfect tense, Miseret, misertum est. Tædet, tæduit & pertæsum est. Placet, placuit & placitum est. Libet, libuit & libitum est. So Licet, Pudet, and Piget.

† These only in the Active voice are always used impersonally; *Miseret, piget, pœnitet, tædet, oportet, decet, pudet, libet, licet, & liquet.* Like unto these are such as are of an exempt power; as, *fulgurat, fulminat, tonat, grandinat, &c.* but some Grammarians say that before these *Cælum* is always understood.

1 Note that when these or any other Verb hath (*it*) before it: and the Nominant not appearing by asking the Question *Who* or *What?* that Verb is then put Impersonally; as, *So it happened, sic accidit.*

2 A Verb Imp. of the Passive Voice may be put for any person of the Active, by putting that person after it in the Ablative case; as, *ſtatur à me*, i. e. *ſto*; *ſtatur à te*, i.e. *ſtas, &c.*

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a word derived of a Verb; and taketh part of a Noun, as Gender, Case and Declension; and part of a Verb, as Tense and Signification; and part of both, as Number and Figure.

There be four kinds of Participles.

1. A Participle of the present Tense which endeth in *ing*, as, *Loving*, *Teaching*; and the Latin in ans or ens, as, amans, docens. It is formed of the Gerund in di, by changing di into s, as, amandi amans, docendi docens, auxiliandi auxilians.

2. A Participle of the future in rus, which signifieth *about to doe*, as, amaturus *about to love*. It is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to rus, as, lectu lecturus[3].

3. A Participle of the Preter Tense hath its English in *d*, *t*, or *n*, as, *loved*, *taught*, *slain*, and the Latin in tus, sus, xus, as, amatus, visus, nexus. It is formed of the latter Supine by putting to s, as of lectu lectus. Except mortuus[4].

4. A Participle of the Future in dus[5], which in Signification is like the Infinitive Mood passive, as, amandus *to be loved*. It is formed of the Gerund in di, by changing di into dus, as, amandi amandus, legendi legendus.

The two Participles Active are formed of all Verbs, which have their Supines; the two Participles Passive come of the Passives and Deponents: But note that such Participles of the preter tense as come of Deponents, most commonly signifie actively; as secutus *following*, or *having followed*, though sometimes passively also.

3 But these are formed irregularly, *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *sonaturus*, *arguiturus*, *luiturus*, *eruiturus*, *nosciturus*, *moriturus*, *oriturus*, *osurus*, *futurus*.

4 There are many words very like Participles; as, *Tunicatus*, *togatus*, *personatus*, *larvatus*, *&c.* which notwithstanding are derived of Nouns, and not of Verbs.

5 This Participle (though properly Passive, yet) is formed frequently from Neuters; as, *dubitandus*, *vigilandus*, *arandus*: Nay even of Impersonals; as, *pœnitendus*, *pudendus*, *pigendus*. And as for Verbs which are or have been accounted Commune, they form all four Participles; as, of *Largior largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

Par-

Participles of the preſent tenſe are declined like Nouns Adjectives of one Termination; as, amans, Gen. amantis, Dat. amanti, *&c.*

Participles of other tenſes are declined like Adjectives of three Terminations; as, Amatus, amata, amatum. Amandus, amanda, amandum, *&c.*

ADVERB.

AN Adverb is a word joined to the Verb, Noun, or Participle, to expreſs ſome circumſtance or quality thereof; as, bene, male, parum, ſatis.

Accidents of an Adverb.

THere belong to an Adverb; Significations, Comparisons, Species, and Figure.

Signification.

THe Signification of Adverbs is various, according to the different circumſtances of the Verb, or other part of Speech to which they are joined.

The moſt conſiderable are Adverbs of Time; as, nunc, tunc, interea, pridie, poſtridie, poſtea, &c.

Place: as, ubi, ubinam, uſquam, nuſquam, eo, longo, quo, ubivis, huccine, &c.

Quantity: as, parum, ſatis, abunde, affatim, partim, &c.

1 It may ſometimes be joined to Pronouns, or other Adverbs; and ought in conſtruing to be taken with the word, the manner of whoſe ſignification it is ſet to declare.

2 There are reckoned up many more ſorts of ſignifications of Adverbs; as, order, number, asking, calling, affirming, denying, ſwearing, exhorting, flattering, forbidding, and ſuch like.

3 Compariſon, Species and Figure are the ſame as in Nouns, ſave onely that Adverbs, make their Comparative in *us*, and the Superlative in *e*; as, *doctè, doctius, doctiſſimè; fortiter, fortius, fortiſſimè.*

† Engliſh Adverbs end frequently in *ly*. The Latin in *e, ter, o, um*; as, *truly, vere; wiſely, ſapienter; rarely, raro; onely, ſolum.* Alſo a Noun repeated with *by, for, from*, &c. may beſt be Latined by an Adverb in *im*; as, *man by man, viritim; by little and little, paulatim, ſenſim; by and by, ſtatim; word for word, verbatim; from door to door, oſtiatim, &c.*

CON-

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a part of Speech which joineth words and Sentences together.

Accidents of a Conjunction.

To a Conjunction belongeth Figure, which is simple; as nam; Compound, as namque, also Power and Order as follow.

Power.

The Power of Conjunctions consisteth in tacking Sentences together, and is twofold; Copulative 1, and Disjunctive. 2

1. Copulative, which couple both the words and sense; as, vir tum probus, tum eruditus; and these are, &, ac, que, atque, quoque, etiam, cum, and tum; and their contraries, as, nec, neque, &c.

2. Disjunctive, which join the words, but disjoin the sense; vel dies est, vel nox; and these are, aut, ve, vel, seu, sive.

Order.

The Order of Conjunctions is threefold.

1. Some are always placed in the beginning of Sentences: so nam, quare, ac, ast, atque, &, aut, vel, nec, neque, si, quin, quatenus, sin, seu, sive, ni, nisi.

2. Some are most commonly placed the second or third, or at farthest the fourth in a Sentence; and these are, quidem, quoque, autem, vero, enim.

3. Some are placed indifferently, where they may most aptly come in; so equidem, ergo, igitur, and all the rest which are not named before.

1 To this head do belong Causals, *Ut, quod, nam, enim, quia.* Conditionals, *si, sin, dum.* Illatives, *ergo, igitur, itaque.* Adversatives, *et si, quam vis.*

2 To this kind do belong Discretives, *sed, autem, at.* Exceptives, *ni, nisi, quin.* Diminutives, *saltem, vel, &c.*

PRE-

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a part of Speech set before other words, either in Composition with them, as, indoctus; or in Government of Case; as, ad Patrem.

These six, am, di, dis, re, se, con, are not used, but in Composition.

Of such as govern Cases see the Syntax.

INTERJECTION.[1]

AN Interjection is a word expressing some passion of the mind.

Passions of the mind arise from the apprehensions of Good and Evil.

From the apprehension of Good are these.

Of admiring, papæ. Of mirth, evax, io, vah. Of praising, euge, eja. Of calling, heus, ô, ehô. Of laughing, ha, ha, he.

From the apprehension of Evil are these.

Of sorrow, hem, eheu, hoi, hei, ah, oh. Of dread, atat. Of disdaining, hem, vah. Of shunning, apage, phuy. Of cursing, malum, væ, væ malum. Of threatning, væ.

From the apprehension of either are these,

Of exclaiming, O, proh. Of silence, au, st, pax 2.

1 Interjections are virtual Sentences, where the Nominative case and the Verb are concealed under an indigested word, contracted for brevity sake, as, *alas!* i. e. *it is a miserable condition*: because being under a Passion or Pressure, we have not leisure to express our selves at large.

2 Sometimes Nouns, or Verbs, or indeed any other words, may be thus used; as, *malum, infandum, quæso, sis,* &c.

† Here note that the distinction between one undeclined part of Speech and another is often so little, that they are taken sometimes one for another. Conjunctions and Prepositions without their casual words, are often accounted Adverbs. And the main difference between an Interjection and an Adverb is, the Adverb is joined always to some other word, expressed or understood; an Interjection satisfies the mind of the hearer without any thing joined with it.

Figures

Figures belonging to ſingle words.

1. PRotheſis, which adds a letter or ſyllable to the beginning of a word: as, gnatus for natus, Tetuli for tuli.

2. Epentheſis, which adds a letter or ſyllable to the middle of a word: as, Induperator for Imperator, Relligio for religio.

3 Paragoge, which adds a letter or ſyllable to the end of a word, as, dicier for dici.

4. Aphæreſis, which taketh away a letter or ſyllable from the beginning of a word; as, ruit for eruit, temnere for contemnere.

5. Syncope, which taketh a letter or ſyllable from the middle of a word, as, abiit for abivit, dixti for dixiſti, repôſtum for repoſitum.

6. Apocope, which takes a letter or ſyllable from the end of a word; as, peculi for peculii, dixtin' for dixtine, vin' for viſne.

7. Metatheſis, when a letter or ſyllable is miſplaced, as, piſtris for priſtis, tymbre for tymber.

8. Antitheſis, when one letter is put for another, as, olli for illi, ſo vortunt, maxume.

9. Tmeſis, when a word is put between the parts of a Compound word, as, Septem ſubjecta trioni, for ſubjecta ſeptentrioni.

10. Enallage, when the parts of Speech or their Accidents are put one for another, as, poſſe loqui for poteſtas loquendi, velle ſuum for voluntas ſua, trepidare for trepidabat; and ſuch like.

SYNTAX.

Syntax is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth how to join words rightly together in Sentences.

Syntaxis eſt debita partium orationis inter ſe compoſitio, connexioque juxta rectam Grammatices rationem.

For

For the due joining of words in Construction three things are necessary to be known.

1. In what Mood, Tense, Number, and Person every Verb1,

2. In what Case, Gender, and Number every Adjective2,

3. In what Number, and Case every Substantive3, as they stand in Sentences are to be put.

The Rules for the Verb and Adjective are called Concords, or rules of Agreement.

The Rules for the Case of the Substantive are called Rules of Government.

Rules of Concord or Agreement.

The First Concord.

1. A Verb Personal must be the same Number and Person with its Nominative Case; as, Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis; *The Master readeth, but ye regard not*4.

Verbum Personale cohæret cum Nominativo, Numero, & Persona.

1 The Verb for its Mood and Tense is directed by the English signs, for its number and person by the Nominative Case.

2 The Adjective for its Case, Gender, and Number, is directed by the Substantive.

3 The Substantive for its Number is directed by the English; for its Case it is to be known either by its place about the Verb, or by its casual sign, or by its signification; or by some Latin word going before it.

4 Note that these English Nominatives [*I, thou, he, we, ye, they, man, men, it,*] are seldom expressed in Latin, except for distinction or *Emphasis* sake, yet must the Verb be the same Number and Person with the Nominative Case understood; as, *Whatsoever men say I praise; quicquid dicunt laudo.* Also *tonat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, vesperascit,* and such like, are frequently used without their Nominatives, *Deus, cælum, aqua, &c.*

Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissimè exprimitur, nisi causâ discretionis, aut Emphasis gratiâ.

In verbis quorum significatio ad homines tantùm pertinet; tertiæ personæ Nominativus sæpe subauditur.

The Second Concord.

II. AN Adjective, whether Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, must be put in the same Case, Gender, and Number, with its Substantive (even when a Verb comes between.) as, Amicus certus. Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes. Mea vulnera senserunt. Rex mandavit primus extirpari hæresin.

Adjectivum cum substantivo genere, numero, & casu consentit.

Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina substantivis adnectuntur.

Denique omnia ferè verba post se Nominativum habent Adjectivi Nominis, quod cum supposito verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat.

The Third Concord.

III. THe Relative Adjective (qui) must be put in the same Gender, Number, and Person with the foregoing Substantive, called the Antecedent; as, Vir bonus est quis? qui consulta patrum, qui leges, juráque servat.

Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, & persona.

But it is often put in another Case, it must therefore be noted, that

When there cometh no Nominative Case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative must be the Nominative Case to the Verb, as, Miser est qui nummos admiratur. Felix qui potuit boni fontem visere lucidum.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interseritur inter Relativum & verbum, Relativum erit verbo Nominativus.

But when there cometh a Nominative Case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be such case as the Verb,

At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à verbo; aut ab alia dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur.

or

or other word whereon it depends, will govern, as. Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum. Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest.

Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites, as, quis, uter, qualis, quantus, quotus, &c. follow the Rules of the Relative, that is, they evermore come before the Verb, or other word whereof they are governed, as, Hei mihi! qualis erat? talis erat qualem nunquam vidi.

General Directions and Exceptions from the Three foregoing Rules or Concords.

When you have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative, ask the Question 2 *Who?* or *What?* therewith: And whatsoever answereth to that Question, shall be the Nominative Case to the Verb; or the Substantive to the Adjective; or the Antecedent to the Relative.

† Adjectives are sometimes set alone without their Substantives: Where we must note, that if the Adjective so set be of the Masculine Gender, there is understood (*man*;) if of the feminine, there is understood (a *female*;) if of the Neuter, (*thing*;) of which the first is usual, the latter elegant; as, *Impii loquuntur iniqua*; *Wicked men speak unjust words or things.*

† It is also to be noted, that Adjectives thus set alone, especially in the Neuter Gender, will govern a Genitive Case; as, *paululum pecuniæ, hoc noctis, &c.*

Adjectivum in Neutro genere, absolutè, hoc est, absque substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat.

1 The Relative, *qui, quæ, quod,* ought to be looked upon as an Adjective placed between two several cases of the same Substantive, whereof the latter is seldom expressed: Supply therefore the Substantive understood, and you may make *qui* agree with it in Case, Gender, and Number, like other Adjectives; as, in these Examples: *He had a Knife, with which* [Knife] *he would have killed himself*; *Ferrum habuit, quo* [ferro] *se occideret. Bellum tantum, quo* [bello] *omnes premebantur, confecit Pompeius.*

2 *i.e.* Put Who or What before the Verb, and after the Adjective or Relative: But often it is better to turn the Relative into an Interrogative, and it self will find its Antecedent.

Sometime an Infinitive Mood: A word ſignifying nothing but it ſelf: A whole Sentence: A part of a Sentence, may anſwer to the Queſtion, and ſo ſupply the place of the Nominative caſe, the Subſtantive, or Antecedent, as, Velle ſuum cuique eſt. Sum Genitivum poſtulat. Ingenuas didiciſſe fideliter artes, emollit mores. Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello. In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum eſt primum.

Non ſemper vox caſualis eſt verbo Nominativus, ſed aliquando verbum infinitum, aliquando oratio, aliquando adverbium cum Genitivo.

Aliquando Oratio ſupplet locum Subſtantivi. Non unica vox ſolum, ſed interdum etiam oratio ponitur pro Antecedente.

Note that an Infinitive Mood, or a Sentence, or whatſoever elſe ſupplies the place of the Nominative Caſe or Subſtantive, is to be accounted of the third perſon, and neuter gender: And if there be more than one, the Verb, Adjective or Relative muſt be plural; as, Tu multum dormis, & ſæpe potas, quæ ambo ſunt corpori inimica.

A Verb coming between two Nominative Caſes of divers Numbers; or an Adjective, eſpecially qui, coming between two Subſtantives of divers Genders, may indifferently agree with either of them, as, Pectus robora fiunt. Sanguis erant lachrymæ. Avis qui (or quæ) paſſer appellatur. Non omnis error ſtultitia eſt dicenda[1].

Verbum inter duos Nominativos diverſorum numerorum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire poteſt.

Relativum inter duo Antecedentia diverſorum generum collocatum; nunc cum priore convenit; nunc cum poſteriore.

When two or more Singulars with a Conjunction copulative coming be-

Copulatum per Conjunctionem Et, nec, neque, &c. & cum, pro & acceptum, eſt pluralis nu-

1 When the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Nominative or Subſtantive that anſwereth the queſtion *who* or *what?* it is regular; but when they do agree with the latter it's a Græciſm.

tween

tween them (expreſſed or underſtood) do answer the Queſtion *Who?* or *What?* the Verb, Adjective or Relative agreeing with them, is uſually put in the plural Number; as, Pater & Præceptor accerſunt te. Remus cum fratre Quirino jura dabant 2.

meri, ac proinde Verbum, aut Adjectivum, aut Relativum exigit plurale.

The Verb moſt commonly agreeth with the Nominative Caſe of the more worthy perſon: Alſo the Adjective with the Subſtantive of the more worthy Gender; as. Ego & tu ſumus in tuto. Tu & Pater eſtis Chriſtiani. Ego & mater miſeri perimus. Tu & uxor, qui adfuiſtis, teſtes eſtote 3.

Syllepſis eſt comprehenſio indignioris ſub digniori.

Quod quidem verbum aut adjectivum aut relativum, genere & perſona, cum digniore ſuppoſito, aut ſubſtantivo quadrabit.

But ſometime the Verb or Adjective agree with the laſt; either in perſon, as, Ego & tu ſtudes; or in gender, as, Maritus & uxor eſt irata; or in number, as, hic illius arma, hic currus fuit 1.

Zeugma eſt unius Verbi vel Adjectivi viciniori reſpondentis ad diverſa ſuppoſita reductio, ad unum quidem expreſſe, ad alterum verò per ſupplementum.

2 This Rule is frequently contradicted in Authours; as, *Et genus & virtus niſi cum re vilior algâ eſt.* Hor. *Avaritia & luxuria omnia regna everterit.* Liv.

3 Here note that the firſt perſon is more worthy than the ſecond; and the ſecond is more worthy than the third. Alſo the Maſculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine; and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter: But in things not apt to have life, the Neuter Gender is moſt worthy; as, *Arcus & calami qua fregiſti. Ira & agritudo permiſta ſunt.*

Dignior autem eſt prima quam ſecunda; & dignior ſecunda quam tertia.

Dignius eſt Maſculinum genus quam Fœmininum, & dignius Fœmininum quam Neutrum.

At cum Subſtantiva res inanimatas ſignificant, Adjectivum aut Relativum uſitatius in Neutro genere ponitur.

1 This is ſaid to be onely an *Ellipſis* of the former Verb or Adjective; as, *ego* [*ſtudeo*] and *tu ſtudes, &c.*

Sometimes the Agreement is in the ſenſe 2, and not in the words; as, Pars in fruſta ſecant. Anſer fœta. Gens armati.

Syntheſis eſt oratio congrua ſenſu, non voce.

2 This irregular Agreement, uſually called *Syntheſis*, may be either in Number, as in Collectives; or Nouns of multitude ſingular, which will have Verbs or Adjectives plural: as, *Uterque deluduntur dolis. Aperite aliquis oſtium. In me turba ruunt luxurioſa proci.* Or in Gender. 1. For the diſtinguiſhing of Sex; as, *Elephantus gravida.* 2. When a word follows the Gender of the common name of things of its kind; as, *Centauro invehitur magnâ, i. e. navi.* 3. When the Quality is put for the Perſon indued therewith; as, *ubi illic ſcelus qui me perdidit, i. e. ſceleſtus.* 4. When the Collective or Numeral implies things of another Gender than it ſelf is; as, *Duo millia crucibus affixi, i. e. hominum.* 5. When a Metaphorical word is put for a proper; as, *Capita Conjurationis virgis cæſi, i. e. Principes.*

Fit autem Syntheſis nunc in numero tantùm.

Nomen multitudinis ſingulare quandoque verbo plurali jungitur.

Or this *Syntheſis* may be both in Number and Gender, and that in Collectives only; as, *Titania proles dejecti. Pars merſi tenuere ratem.*

Nunc in genere tantum, idque aut ſexûs diſcernendi gratiâ, aut ſupplementi gratiâ.

† There is another Conſtruction in ſenſe called *Sylleptis Relativa*, that is, when the Adjective or Relative hath relation to ſome Subſtantive not expreſſed, but included in ſome Poſſeſſive, or in the ſenſe of the foregoing words; as, *Laudare fortunas meas, qui filium haberem tali ingenio præditum*; where (*qui*) hath reſpect to *ego* included in the Poſſeſſive *meus. De Praliana hæreditate, quæ quidem mihi magis doloſi eſt, valdè enim illum amavi, hic velim cures. Ex tuo ipſius animo conjecturam feceris. Noſtra omnium memoria. Noſter duorum eventus oſtendat utra gens ſit melior. Scripta eum mea nemo legat, vulgo recitare timentis.*

Nunc verò in genere & numero ſimul.

Aliquando Relativum, aliquando & Nomen Adjectivum reſpondit primitivo, quod in poſſeſſivo ſubintelligitur.

Hæc Poſſeſſiva, meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter & veſter hos genitivos poſt ſe recipiunt, ipſius, ſolius, unius, &c. & Genitivos Participiorum, quæ ad Genitivum Primitivi in poſſeſſivo incluſum referuntur.

The

The Concord of Substantives.

When two or more Substantives come together 1. belonging to one thing, and having no casual sign between them, they must all be put in the same 2 Case; as, Pater meus vir amat me puerum. Urbs Athenæ, Marcus Tullius Cicero.

Appositio est duorum Substantivorum ejusdem casus, quorum altero declaratur alterum; continuata, sive immediata conjunctio.

Potest etiam Appositio plurium Substantivorum esse.

Excipiuntur quæ in eodem casu per Appositionem connectuntur.

The Concord of the Interrogative and Redditive.

When a question is asked, the answer in latin must be made by the same Case of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle; and by the same Tense of a Verb that the Question is asked by 3; as, Cujus est fundus? vicini. Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? divitiarum. Quid agitur in ludo literario? studetur.

Interrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus & temporis erunt.

1 Words which are thus to be joined in the same Case, have commonly the English particle (*being*) expressed or understood coming between them, as, *My Father being a man loveth me being a Child. Tully*, an *excellent Orator and Philosopher, i. e. being an excellent Orator, &c.*

2. Note also, that if the latter Substantive have the sign (*of*) before it, it may be put in the Genitive Case, although they do belong both to one thing, as, *Urbs Antiochiæ.* Cic. *Urbs Patavii.* Virg.

3 This Rule fails if a Question be asked by *cujus, cuja, cujum*; as, *cuja est sententia? Ciceronis.* Or by a word that may govern divers Cases; as, *quanti emisti librum? parvo.* Or if the answer be to be made by one of these Possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*; as, *cujus est domus? non vestra, sed nostra.*

Fallit hæc regula quoties interrogatio fit per cujus, cuja, cujum. Aut per dictionem variæ Syntaxeos.

Fallit denique cum per Possessiva meus, tuus, suus, &c. respondendum est.

Rules of Government.

How to find the Caſe of the Subſtantive by its Place.

1. Before the Verb.

The Subſtantive which cometh next before the Verb, without any Caſual ſign, and anſwereth to the queſtion *Who?* or *What?* made by the verb, is to be the Nominative Caſe; as, Veritas odium parit. Fortuna nunquam perpetuò eſt bona 1 2 3.

But note that the Nominative caſe muſt be ſet after the Verb. 1. When a queſtion is asked; as, Amas tu. 2. Of the verb of the Imperative Mood; as, Amato ille. 3. Of *it* or *there* come before the verb or its ſign; as, Venit ad me quidem. Eſt liber meus.

2. After the Verb.

The Subſtantive 4 which cometh next

Verba tranſitiva cujuſcunque generis, ſive Activi, ſive Com-

Verba Infiniti Modi pro Nominativo Accuſativum ante ſe ſtatuunt.

1. Here note that [*quod* & *ut*] may be left out in a Sentence: and then the Verb muſt be turned into the Infinitive, and its Nominative Caſe into an Accuſative before it; as, *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales*; or, *Gaudeo te bene valere.*, *Te fabulam agere velo.*

2 When [*quod* or *ut*] is retained then the Verbs Conſtruction muſt follow the general rules; as, *jubeo ut tu ames.*

Reſolvi poteſt hic poteſt hic modus per quod & ut.

3 The word which ſeemeth in Engliſh to be Nominative to an Impersonal muſt be ſuch caſe as that Verb will govern after it: as, *I muſt, oportet me. Thou mayeſt, tibi licet.* [Viz. *It behoveth me. It is lawfull for thee*, where *it* is the Nominative, and the words following are governed according to Rule.

Impersonalia rarò præcedentem Nominativum habent.

4. Note that the word anſwering the Queſtion *whom?* or *what?* may be called the caſual word of the *thing*; becauſe it denotes the *object* [or *thing*] that finiſheth the ſenſe, or determines the ſignification of the Verb; as, *I love. What (thing) do I love? God. I live*; *what do I live? a life*, &c.

after

after the Verb, without any casual sign before it, and answereth to the question *Whom?* or *What?* made by the Verb, is to be the Accusative Case; as, Imprimis venerate Deum. Pater amat liberos. Aper depopulatur agros.

munis, sive Deponens, regunt Accusativum.

Quinetiam verba, quamlibet alioquin in transitiva atque absoluta, Accusativum admittunt cognata significationis.

Verbs of asking, teaching and arraying, also celo, have after them two Accusative Cases; as, Posce Deum veniam. Doceo te literas. Induo me calceos. Nec ea me celet.

Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi duplicem regunt Accusativum.

Here note that if the Active will govern two Accusative Cases, the Passive will have one; as, Rogantur sententiam.

From the Second General Rule are excepted.

1. Verbs governing a Nominative Case.

Verbs Substantives; Sum, forem, fio, existo. Verbs Passives. Verbs Neuters of Gesture have after them a Nominative Case; as, Deus est summum bonum. Horatius salutatur poeta. Malus pastor dormit Supinus.

Verba Substantiva, ut Sum, forem, fio, &c. Verba vocandi Passiva; ut Nominor, appellor, & iis similia, ut scribor, &c. item Verba gestus, ut sedeo, dormio, utrinque Nominativum expetunt.

1 But either of the Accusatives may be changed into Dative or Ablative case with a Preposition, as the sign or sense requires; as, *Veniam oremus ab ipso. Induo te tunicâ, vel tibi tunicam.*

Rogandi verba interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Ablativum. Vestiendi verba interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Ablativum vel Dativum.

But

But theſe Infinitives have the ſame caſe after them that they have before them; as, Malo me divitem eſſe quàm haberi. Natura beatis omnibus eſſe dedit, ſi quis cognoverit uti.

Infinitivi quoque utrinque eoſdem caſus habent.

2. Verbs governing a Genitive Caſe.

1. SAtago, miſereor, miſereſco. 2. Obliviſcor, reminiſcor, recordor & memini 2. 3. Intereſt, & refert 3 [*it concerneth*] will have a Genitive Caſe; as, Rerum ſuarum ſatagit. Reminiſcor hiſtoriæ. Intereſt magiſtratus tueri bonos. Refert multum Chriſtianæ Reipublicæ, Epiſcopos doctos & pios eſſe.

Satago, miſereor, miſereſco Genitivum admittunt.

Reminiſcor, obliviſcor, memini Genitivum aut Accuſativum deſiderant.

Hæc tria Imperſonalia, intereſt, refert & eſt, quibuſlibet Genitivis adnectuntur.

3. Verbs governing a Dative Caſe.

CErtain Verbs ſignifying Profit 1, Pleaſure 2, Help 3, Favour 3, Truſt 4, Threatning, Commanding 5, and Di-

Verba ſignificantia commodum aut incommodum regunt Dativum.

Verba imperandi Dativum requirunt.

2 Theſe four govern alſo an Accuſative Caſe.

3 But [*me, thee, his, us, you,* and *whom*] after *it concerneth,* are to latined by theſe Feminine Adjectives, *mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, veſtra,* and *cuja*; as, *it concerns me, mea refert. It concerns thee to know thy ſelf, tua refert teipſum noſſe.*

Præter hos Ablativos fœmininos, mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, veſtra, & cuja.

1 Theſe are *commodo, incommodo, noceo, proficio, officio,* and the compounds of *ſatis, bene,* and *male*; but *juvo, adjuvo, lædo,* and *offendo* have an Accuſative.

2 Theſe are *placeo, ſedeo,* for *placeo, diſpliceo, doleo,* which laſt admits an Accuſative of the *thing.*

3 Theſe are *auxilior, opitulor, patrocinor, medeor, faveo, grator, gratulor, congratulor, pareo, indulgeo, conſulo, ſtudeo, plaudo, ſubvenio, ſuccurro.*

4 Theſe are *credo, fido, diffido, confido.*

5 Theſe are *impero, jubeo, præcipio, dominor, mando.*

bey=

beying 6, with their contraries, have next after them a Dative Case; as, Bonis nocet, qui malis parcit. Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. Pius filius semper obtemperat patri.

Verba fidendi dativum regunt.
Verba obsequendi & repugnandi dativum regunt.
Verba minandi regunt dativum.

Also Verbs compounded with these Prepositions, [præ, ad, con, sub, post, ob, in, inter, and super.] have usually a Dative Case 7; as, Ego meis majoribus virtute præluxi. Albo galbo ne manum admoliaris.

Dativum postulant verba composita cum his præpositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, post, ob, in, & inter.

4. Verbs Governing an Ablative Case.

VErbs of wanting, and potior, also [sto or consto, *to cost*,] cause the noun following to be put in the Ablative or the Genitive Case; as, Caret virtute, indigeas patris. Potior urbis, potior voto. *It cost a penny*, denario constitit; *it cost more*, constitit pluris.

Verba carendi & indigendi Ablativo gaudent.
Ex quibus quædam etiam in Genitivum feruntur.
Potior aut Genitivo aut Ablativo jungitur.
Quibuslibet verbis additur nomen pretii in Ablativo.

Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, and some such like have an Ablative Case onely; as,

Fungor, fruor, utor, & similia, Ablativo junguntur.

6 These are *Pareo, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morigeror, servio, famulor, ancillor, velificor, blandior, adulor, assentior, palpo, repugno, pugno, resisto, advertor, luctor, refragor, reclamo.* Some of which notwithstanding, are found and may be used with an Accusative Case. Hither are to be observed *suadeo, persuadeo, respondeo, vaco, nubo, misceo, hæreo, voveo, devoveo, innitor, insidior.*

7 The meaning of this Rule is, that such as signifie Actively have an Accusative Case and a Dative; Neuters and Passives a Dative onely. *Præeo, præcedo, præcurro, præverto, prævertor*, and *præsto*, for *excello, antecedo, anteeo, antesto*, &c. have rather an Accusative, also divers others compounded with *ante, ob*, and *in*, do change the Dative into the Case of their Preposition: as, *incumbo studiis, in hæc studia incumbite. Accessit meis malis, accede ad hunc ignem.* [*Obeo, adeo, aspicio, admiror*, with some others of like sort, never admit of a Dative Case.]

4. Verbs

Optimum eſt alienâ frui Inſaniâ. Utere diligentiâ. Veſcor carnibus 1.

How to know the Caſe of the Subſtantive by ſigns.

Of the Sign *of* after a Noun.

A Caſual word with this ſign [*of*] coming after a Subſtantive or an Adjective is put in the Genitive Caſe, as, amor nummi, *the love of money*; cupidus auri, *deſirous of gold*; appetens vini, *greedy of wine*; aliquis veſtrum, *ſome of you* 2.

Quum duo Subſtantiva diverſæ ſignificationis ſic concurrunt, ut poſterius à priore poſſideri quodammodo videatur, tum poſterius in Genitivo ponitur. Adjectiva quæ deſiderium, notitiam, memoriam, atque iis contraria ſignificant, Genitivum adſciſcunt. Adjectiva verbalia in ax, etiam in Genitivum feruntur. Nomina Partitiva, & partitivè poſita, interrogativa quædam & certa numeralia, Genitivo, à quo & genus mutuantur, gaudent. Comparativa & ſuperlativa accepta partitivè, Genitivum, unde & genus ſortiuntur, exigunt. Quædam tamen ex his Adjectivis etiam Genitivo gaudent. Participiorum voces cum fiunt Nomina Genitivum poſtulant.

1 Yet in very ancient Authours, eſpecially the Comedians, theſe are ſometimes found with an Accuſative Caſe, but not now to be imitated.

2 When [*Of*] comes before the matter whereof any thing is made, it is better to render it by a Material, or an Ablative Caſe with a Prepoſition, than by the Genitive Caſe; as, *a knife of Iron, culter ferreus, vel ex ferro*, not *cultar ferri. Poculum aureum, vel ex auro; a cup of gold.*

† Sometimes [*Of*] is not expreſſed, but underſtood in (*s*) tailed to the end of the former Subſtantive; as, *Man's Nature*; i. e. *the Nature of Man. The Childrens bread*, i. e. *the bread of the Children.* Thus [*his, hers, ours, their, whoſe,*] are to be taken for Genitives. So [*thereof, thereof, whereof*] are uſed for *of this, of that, of which*, &c.

Here obſerve, that when [*s*] denotes Poſſeſſion it is often made by an Adjective Poſſeſſive; as, *my Father's houſe, paterna domus; my Maſter's Son, herilis filius*; [*mine, thine, others, yours,*] always by *meus, tuus, noſter*, and *veſter*; as, *this book is mine, hic codex eſt meus.*

Proinde hic Genitivus ſæpiſſime in Adjectivum Poſſeſſivum mutatur. Excipiuntur hi Nominativi meum, tuum, noſtrum, veſtrum, humanum, belluinum, & ſimilia.

3. Ex-

3. Exceptions from this Rule.

1. An Adjective ſignifying paſſively, as alſo a participial in dus, have [*of*] with a Dative Caſe; as, flebilis, flendus omnibus, *to be lamented of all men.* Nulli penetrabilis aſtro, *to be pierced of no Star.*

Verbalia in bilis accepta paſſive, ut & participia, ſeu potius participialia in dus, dativo adjecto gaudent.

2. Words ſignifying fulneſs or emptineſs, Opus and uſus, dignus, indignus, and captus, have after them [*of*] in the Ablative Caſe 1; as, vacuus irâ, *void of wrath.* Opus eſt mihi tuo judicio, *I have need of thy judgment.* Dignus odio, *worthy of hatred.* Captus oculis, *deprived of eyes.*

Opus & uſus ablativum exigunt.

Adjectiva quæ ad copiam, egeſtatemve pertinent interdum Ablativo, interdum & Genitivo gaudent. Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, exterris auferendi caſum adjectum volunt.

3. Words importing any quality to the praiſe or diſpraiſe of a thing, may be the Genitive Caſe, but are more often uſed in the Ablative; as, *a boy of a good wit,* Puer bono Ingenio, or boni Ingenii. Vir nulla fide, *a man of no credit.*

Laus & Vituperium rei variis modis effertur, at frequentius in Ablativo vel Genitivo.

Note alſo that [*his* and *their*] if they have reſpect to the Nominative Caſe of the principal Verb, are made by *ſui*, and *ſuus*, otherwiſe by the Genitives, of *ille, ipſe, iſte, is*; as, *Petrus parcit erroribus ſuis*, Peter *ſpareth his own faults.*

Sui & ſuus reciproca ſunt, hoc eſt, ſemper reflectuntur ad id quod præceſſit in eadem oratione.

1 But *Opus*, *dignus*, and *indignus*, have ſometimes a Genitive; as, *multa impenſæ opus fuit*; *digna operis tui*, *indignus avorum.*

Horum nonnulla interdum Genitivum vendicant.

Of the Sign *of* after a Verb.

A Caſual word with this ſign [*of* 1] coming immediately after a Verb, muſt be put in the Ablative Caſe, with a, ab, e, ex, or de; as, *when I heard of the Meſſenger that you were well*, cum audiverim ex nuncio te eſſe incolumem. *I will ſpeak of thoſe things next*, proximum de his loquar.

Mereor cum adverbiis, bene, male, melius, &c. ablativo adhæret cum Præpoſitione de.

Quædam accipiendi, diſtandi, & auferendi verba ablativum cum Præpoſitione optant.

Paſſivis additur ablativus agentis, ſed antecedente præpoſitione.

Vapulo, væneo, liceo, exulo, fio, Neutro paſſivam habent conſtructionem.

Exc.

The Caſual Word of the Poſſeſſor after [ſum.] Of the uncertain value after Verbs of eſteeming. Of the particular crime after Verbs of accuſing or abſolving, is put in the Genitive Caſe 2; as, *It is the part of a fool to ſay I had not thought*; Inſipientis eſt dicere non putâram. *Honeſty is eſteemed of little value*, Parvi penditur probitas. *He is accuſed of theft*, Accuſatur furti.

Sum Genitivum poſtulat quoties ſignificat poſſeſſionem, aut ad aliquid pertinere.

Verba æſtimandi Genitivo gaudent.

Verba accuſandi, damnandi, monendi, abſolvendi, & conſimilia Genitivum poſtulant, qui crimen ſignificet.

1 When [*of*] may be turned into the ſign of an Ablative Caſe; (as, *concerning, from, by*, &c.) it is uſually made by a prepoſition; as, *I heard it of* (that is, *from*, or *by*) *the Meſſenger*; *I will ſpeak of theſe things*, i. e. *concerning* theſe, *&c.*

2 Note that if [*of* or *'s*] after a Verb be made by a Genitive Caſe, as in the poſſeſſour, value, crime, that Genitive is not properly governed of the Verb, but of ſome Subſtantive underſtood; as, *hic liber eſt fratris*, i. e. *liber fratris. Eſt Paſtoris curare greges*, i. e. *munus Paſtoris. Eſt bonæ indolis*, i. e. *puer bonæ Indolis. Accuſare furti*, i. e. *de crimine furti. Non hujus te æſtimo*, i. e. *non pretio hujus.*

The word ſignifying the part affected ſometimes follows this conſtruction: as, *angas te animi*, i. e. *dolore animi: deſipiebam mentis*, i. e. *cogitatione vel anxietate mentis.*

Quædam tamen efferuntur in gignendi caſu.

Of

Of the Signs *to* and *for*.

A Caſual word with this ſign [*to* or *for*] before it, is uſually put in the Dative Caſe, (eſpecially if any acquiſition 1 be intimated by it) as, *A Father to the Country*, Pater patriæ. *Labour is profitable for the Body:* Labor eſt utilis corpori. *They neither do good to themſelves, nor to others*, Nec ſibi, nec alteri proſunt. *I have it for this Man, and not for thee*, Huic habeo, non tibi.

Eſt ubi etiam in Dativum vertitur.

In alio verò ſenſu Dativum.

Adjectiva quibus commodum, incommodum, ſimilitudo, diſſimilitudo, voluptas, ſubmiſſio, aut relatio ad aliquid ſignificatur, in Dativum tranſeunt.

Huc referuntur nomina ea con præpoſitione compoſita.

Nonnunquam etiam Dativum.

Omnia verba acquiſitivè poſita adſciſcunt dativum ejus rei cui aliquid quocunq; modo acquiritur.

Verba comparandi regunt Dativum.

Verba dandi & reddendi regunt Dativum.

Verba promittendi, &c. ſolvendi, etiam nunciandi Dativum requirunt.

Eſt pro habeo Dativum exigit.

Sum cum Compoſitis præter poſſum exigit Dativum.

In Dativum feruntur hæc Imperſonalia, accidit, certum eſt, contingit, conſtat, confert, competit, conducit, &c.

If both theſe ſigns may properly follow a verb, that verb will admit a double Dative Caſe; as, *Thou gaveſt thy garment to me for a pledge*; Dediſti mihi veſtem pignori. *Thou accounteſt this for a praiſe to thee*, Hoc tu tibi laudi ducis.

Sum cum multis aliis geminum adſciſcit Dativum.

1 A word whether it ſignifie perſon or thing, is ſaid to be put acquiſitively, when it denotes the *End*, *Subject*, or *Object*, *to* or *for* which any thing is done or gotten, or *from* which any thing is taken, or to which any thing is like, belongeth or hath relation.

Excep-

Exceptions of *to*.

1. [*To*] after Adjectives noting forwardness, readiness, fitness or inclineableness, is made by ad; as, *A ready way to honours*, Pronum iter ad honores. *Born to glory*, natus ad gloriam.

Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, interdum etiam Accusativo cum præpositione adjunguntur.

2. If [*to*] be put for [*in comparison of*] it is to be made by ad or præ. If it signifie [*concerning*] by ad or de: as, *Nothing to* (*i. e.* in comparison of) Persius, Nihil ad Persium. Illos præ se agrestes putat, *he thinks them Clowns to him*. Postquam vos ad virtutem verba feciſtis, *after you had ſpoke to* (*i. e.* concerning) *vertue*.

3. Verbs ſignifying to apply, add, appertain, or belong, call, exhort, invite, or provoke, have after them an Accusative Case with ad, as. *It is nothing to me*, Nihil ad me attinet. *He invited me to ſupper*, Ad cœnam invitavit. *To provoke one to fight*, Ad pugnam laceſſere.

His vero attinet, ſpectat, pertinet, proprie additur præpoſitio ad.

4. [*To*] after verbs of motion is alſo made by ad, as, Manus ad ſydera tollit, *He lift up his Hands to the Stars*. *He writ Letters to me*, Scripſit ad me Literas. *He came to* Geneva, Ad Genevam pervenit.

But before [*home, countrey*] and the names of Cities or Towns, the Præpoſition is often omitted; as, *I go to Rome*, Eo Romam. *I betake my ſelf to the Countrey*, Recipio me rus.

Verbis ſignificantibus motum ad locum, apponitur proprium loci in Accuſativo.

Ad eundem modum uſurpantur Domus & Rus.

Exceptions of *for*.

1. [*For*] ſignifying the Cauſe or reaſon of a thing,

Adjectiva regunt ablativum ſignificantem cauſam.

1 The Poets ſometimes uſe it in the Dative, as, *It clamor cœlo.*

to

is made either by the Ablative; or else by one of these Prepositions, de, præ, ob, propter 2, pro; as, *Pale for anger*, Pallidus irâ. *She could not speak for Tears*, Præ lachrymis loqui non potuit.

Quodvis verbum admittit Ablativum significantem instrumentum aut causam, &c.

2. [*For*] before words of price is a sign of an Ablative Case; as, *He sold his body for Gold*, Corpus auro vendebat. *I bought a horse for five pounds*, Equum emi quinque libris.

Quibuslibet verbis additur nomen pretii in Ablativo.

Except these words [*for so much, for how much, for more, for less, or under*] put alone without Substantives, which are latined by those Genitives, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, &c. as, *I do not sell for more than others*, Non vendo pluris quam alii.

Excipiuntur hi Genitivi sine Substantivis positi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque.

3. [*For*] When it imports the doing of something by way of reward or exchange; then it is made by pro; as, Pro te molam, *I will grind for thee.* Hoc tibi pro præmio erit.

4. [*For*] Before words of Time is made by ad, in, or per. If it import the end or use of a thing, by ad, or in, Ad brevissimum tempus, *for a very little time.* Per tot secula, *for so many ages. All things are created for the use of man*; Ad (or in) usum hominum omnia creantur.

5. [*For*] in distribution of things by proportion to several persons, is made elegantly by in; as, Duodena describit in singulos homines jugera, *he set down twelve Acres for every man.*

Of the Signs *in, with, through, from,* &c.

A Casual word having before it [*in, with, through, from, at, on, by,* and

Laus & Vituperium rei, &c. Comparativa cum exponuntur per quam Ablativum adsciscunt.

2 But in Comick Latin the Preposition governing an Accusative Case is often omitted, the same Case still remaining, as, *Num id lachrymat virgo? Id opinor. Doth the Girl weep for that? I think for that*; where *propter* is understood.

than after a Comparative.] is to be the Ablative Case: as, *A man with a crooked nose*, Vir naso adunco. *More cold than Ice*, Frigidior glacie. *Higher by a Foot*, Uno pede altior. Trojanus origine Cæsar. Ire rectâ viâ. Induo te tunicâ. Dæmona non armis sed morte subegit Iesus. Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit. Præfero hunc multis gradibus. Nocte latent mendæ, &c.

Adsciscunt & alterum Ablativum, qui mensuram excessûs significat.

Forma vel modus rei adjicitur nominibus in Ablativo.

Hunc Accusativum mutant Authores non raro in Ablativum.

Vestiendi verba interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Ablativum.

Quodvis verbum admittit Ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis.

Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, Ablativo gaudent.

Verbis quæ vim comparationis obtinent, adjicitur Ablativus significans mensuram excessûs.

Verbis quibusdam additur auferendi casus, per Synecdochen Accusativus.

Quæ significant partem temporis in Ablativo frequentius usurpantur, in Accusativo raro.

Verum si proprium loci nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in Dativo aut Ablativo ponitur.

Sic utimur ruri vel rure in Ablativo.

Verbis significantibus motum à loco aut per locum adjicitur proprium loci in Ablativo.

Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, in Ablativum feruntur.

Exceptions from the foregoing Rule 1.

1. [*With*] for *to* after verbs of comparing; and for (*at*) after verbs that signifie to be angry, is made by a Dative Case; as, Sic parvis componere magna solebam, *So was I used to compare great things with small.* Nihil est quod Adolescenti succenseat.

Verba comparandi regunt Dativum.

Verba irascendi regunt Dativum.

1 The part affected with any property or passion, though it have the signs (*on* or *in*) yet it is often put in the Accusative Case; as, *diseased in the feet, ager pedes. Wounded on the forehead, saucius frontem. Fractus membra labore.* This is called *Synecdoche.*

2. [*From*]

2. [*From*] after verbs of differing or taking away 2, is ſometimes made by the Dative Caſe; as, Inimici mei, mea mihi, non meipſum ademerunt, *Mine Enemies have taken away my goods from me, but not my ſelf.* Paulùm ſepultæ diſtat inertiæ celata virtus.

Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum.

3. [*By*] after verbs paſſives and their Participles is often made by the Dative 3 Caſe; Nec cernitur ulli, *he is ſeen by none.* Nulla tuarum audita mihi, nec viſa ſororum, *none of thy Siſters were heard or ſeen by me.*

Paſſivis additur interdum Dativus.

Quorum Participia frequentiùs Dativis gaudent.

Quamvis in his uſitatior eſt Dativus.

4. [*At* or *in*] before the proper name of a place, of the firſt or ſecond Declenſion and ſingular number, are uſually made by the Genitive 4 Caſe; as, Quid Romæ faciam? *What ſhall I do at* Rome? Ea habitabat Rhodi; *She dwelt at* Rhodes.

Omne Verbum admittit Genitivum proprii nominis loci, in quo fit actio, modo ſit primæ vel ſecundæ Declinationis, & ſingularis numeri.

So [*at* 1 or *in*] before *home*, *houſe* or *war*, and [*on*] before *ground*, are alſo Genitives;

Hi Genitivi, humi, domi, militiæ, belli, propriorum ſequuntur formam.

2 Note that as after Verbs of taking, ſo of diſtance, carrying, delivering, ſaving, keeping, ſending, fetching, receiving, hearing; and generally all Verbs that have the participle *away* after them, or do import a motion of proceſs, *From* is made by the Ablative Caſe.

3 This Dative is ſaid to be moſtly Poetical, and the Conſtruction by a Prepoſition is much more frequent.

4 This Genitive is ſaid to be governed of a Subſtantive underſtood; *Vixit Romæ*, i.e. *in urbe Romæ.*

1 [*At*] before a word of place ſignifying *near*, *nigh*, or *cloſe by*, is made by [*ad*, *apud*,] ſometimes by [*pro*] as, *He commanded the Bridge which was at* Geneva *to be cut aſunder*, *Pontem qui erat ad Genevam jubet reſcindi.* *At*, [*near* or *by*] *the door*, *pro foribus*, *ad fores*, *ab oſtio.*

[*At*] ſignifying *in* or *near*, and applied to ſome particular part or point of place of time, is made by *in*; as, *I liked it at the very firſt*, *jam in principio ita mihi placebat.* But when preſence is ſignified it may be made by *inter*; as, *he was at that Sermon*, *ei ſermoni interfuit.*

as, domi ero, ſi quid me voles, *I ſhall be at home, if thou wouldſt any thing with me.* Militiæ enutritus. Procumbit humi bos. *The Ox lieth on the ground.*

Of the Sign *O.*

WOrds by which we call or ſpeak to one, (having the ſign *o* always expreſſed or underſtood) are to be put in the Vocative Caſe; as, O Magiſter! *O Maſter!* Miſerere mei, Domine! *O Lord have mercy upon me.*

How to know the Caſe of the Subſtantive by its Signification.

WOrds ſignifying the meaſure 1, of length, breadth, thickneſs, height or depth. 2. Of the ſpace 2 and diſtance from one place to another.

1. *Magnitudinis menſura ſubjicitur Adjectivis in Accuſativo.*

2. *Quæ autem durationem temporis & continuationem denotant, in Accuſativo interdum & in Ablativo efferuntur.*

† Here is to be noted, that, 1. Sometimes the ſigns of caſes are ſet at a diſtance, which muſt be rectified by ſetting the words in their natural order, as, *The man whom I told you of*; i. e. *of whom I told you. What is he good for?* i. e. *for what*, &c. Or elſe they are joined to the end of the caſual word they govern; thus *hereby, thereby, wherewith*, &c. are put for *by that, by this, by which, with this*, &c. 2. Sometimes they are not expreſſed but underſtood, eſpecially (*to* and *for*) which the learner muſt be taught to ſupply; as, *like me, near me, give me, tell me*, i. e. *to me.* 3. Sometimes they are redundant, and then the Subſtantive following them muſt be put into ſuch caſes as the Verb will have without them; as, *to admit of one, admittere aliquem; to hope for health, ſperare ſalutem; to wonder at one, mirari aliquem*; with many ſuch like.

† Note alſo that the ſigns of the Ablative Caſe are Engliſh Prepoſitions, and may at any time be made by Latin ones anſwerable to them: and when the word in Latin is put alone in the Ablative, there is ſaid to be an *Ellipſis*, or want of a Prepoſition.

1. Sometimes in the Ablative; as, *Pons latus pedibus tribus*; rarely in the Genitive; as, *Areas longas pedum quinquagenum facito.*

2. Sometimes in the Ablative; as, *Abeſt ab urbe quingentis millibus paſſuum.* In the Genitive by *Ellipſis*, as, *abeſt biduî*, i. e. *abeſt iter* [*vel ſpatio*] *biduî.*

3. Of

3. Of the continuance of time 3, are put in the Accuſative Caſe; as, *A tree three fingers broad*, Arbor lata tres digitos. Spatium cœli tres pateat ulnas. Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.

3 *Spatium loci in Accuſativo effertur, interdum & in Ablativo.*

Rules for the Infinitive, Gerund, Supine, and Participle.

The Infinitive Mood Active.

The Engliſh Infinitive Active, known commonly by this ſign *to*, coming

1. After a Noun is made by the Gerund 4 in di, or in dum with the Preſition ad: Romæ non eſt reſpirandi locus, *at* Rome *there is not place to breath.* Diem ad deliberandum ſumit, *he took a day to conſider.*

Gerundia in di pendet à quibuſdam tum Subſtantivis tum Adjectivis.

2. After words that govern an Accuſative Caſe with ad, it may be made by the Gerund in dum, with ad, or by the firſt Supine, as: Ad cœnandum invitavit; *he invited me to ſup.* Ad pugnandum laceſſit, *he provoketh to fight.* Spectatum veniunt, *they come to ſee.*

Gerundia in dum pendent ab his præpoſitionibus, inter, ante, ad, ob, propter.

Prius Supinum activè ſignificat, & ſequitur verbum, aut participium, ſignificans motum ad locum.

3 This always anſwers the Queſtion (*how long?*) and is ſometimes uſed in the Ablative Caſe: as, *Imperavit triennio, decem menſibus, octoque diebus.* But note that this Caſual word of the continuance of time: as, alſo that of the part of time (which anſwereth the queſtion (*When?*) are frequently made by the preposition ſerving both Caſes; as, *In paucis diebus, per tres annos, de die, de nocte.*

4 Note that ſometimes inſtead of the Gerund in *dum*, or *di*, is uſed an Infinitive Mood, as, *Studium quibus arva tueri. Avidi promittere bellum. Id quod parati ſunt facere.* But this is a Greciſm, and moſtly uſed by the Poets.

3. After the Verb [Sum, *I am,*] if neceſſity or duty be noted it is made by the Gerund in dum. If purpoſe or probability it is made by the Participle in rus; as, *We are to* [or we muſt] *treat firſt of honeſty*, Primùm eſt de honeſto diſſerendum. *We are now to act* Menander's *Eunuch*, Nunc acturi ſumus Menandri Eunuchum.

Cum ſignificatur neceſſitas, ponitur citra præpoſitionem addito verbo eſt.

4. If it comes after any other words, or in any other manner, it is made by the Latin Infinitive Active; as, Dicere quæ puduit, ſcribere juſſit amor.

Quibuſdam tum verbis, tum adjectivis familiariter ſubjiciuntur verba infinita.

Alſo when two Verbs come together, without any Nominative Caſe between them, then the latter ſhall be the Infinitive Mood; as, Has injurias non poſſum tolerare, *I cannot bear theſe Injuries.*

The Infinitive Mood Paſſive.

The Engliſh Infinitive Paſſive, known by the ſign [*to be*] coming

1. After certain Adjectives; as, dignus, facilis, turpis, &c. may be made by the latter Supine; as, Turpe dictu, *filthy to be ſpoken.* Facile factu, *eaſie to be done.*

Poſterius Supinum paſſivè ſignificat, & ſequitur nomina Adjectiva.

2. After the verb (Sum, *I am,*) or a Noun Subſtantive, it is to be made by a participle in dus, as, *God is to be worſhipped*, Deus eſt colendus. *A field to be tilled*, ager colendus.

3. Otherwiſe by the Latin Infinitive Paſſive.

The Engliſh Participle in *ing*.

The Engliſh of the Participle of the Preſent tenſe is to be rendred

1. By a Gerund in di after a Noun; as, *The deſire of having*, amor habendi,

Gerundia in di pendent à quibuſdam tum Subſtantivis tum Adjectivis.

di,

di. *Men deſirous of waging war*, Homines bellandi cupidi.

2. By a Gerund in do, after ſigns or Prepoſitions requiring a Dative or an Ablative Caſe; as, cum ſolvendo Civitates non eſſent idoneæ; *when the Cities were not fit for paying.* Alitur vitium tegendo, *Vice is nouriſhed by concealing.*

Gerundia in do pendent ab his præpoſitionibus, â, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro.

Ponuntur & abſque præpoſitione.

3. After a verb of motion by a Supine; as, *he went a hunting*, abiit venatum. *He came from hunting*, redit venatu. But if it have a ſign before it, which muſt be latined by a Prepoſition governing an Accuſative Caſe, then it is to be made by the Gerund in dum; as, *I came for the redeeming of thee*, Veni propter te redimendum. *While they were ſupping*, Inter cœnandum 1.

Prius Supinum, &c.
Gerundia in dum pendent, &c.

4. If [*ing*] come with a Subſtantive, which is neither the Nominative Caſe to the Verb, nor governed by any other word, it is to be made by the Ablative Caſe abſolute: as, *I being Captain*, Me duce. *The King coming*, Rege veniente 2.

Quibuſlibet verbis additur Ablativus abſolutè ſumptus.

1 Note alſo that the Participle (*ing*) coming after the Verb (*am*) is to be made by the Verb; thus: *What are you doing? quid facis? I am reading, lego.* Likewiſe theſe words, *awake, aſleep*; as, *I am awake, vigilo. I am aſleep, dormio.*

The Participle (*having*) coming after a Verb is to be latin'd either by the Participle Preter of the Verb Deponent; as, *having ſpoken he ſate down, locutus conſedit.* Or the Preterpluperfect tenſe of the Verb, and *cum*; as, *Having heard this he departed, hoc cum audiviſſet abiit.*

2 The word (*being*) coming before a Subſtantive, or an Adjective, hath no latin for it; But is uſually the ſign of the Ablative Caſe abſolute. And if it come between two Subſtantives, it ſhews they muſt be put in the ſame caſe by Appoſition; as, *Teſte Horatio, Horace being witneſs.* The Ablative Caſe Abſolute may be reſolved into a perfect tentence, by adding one of theſe Conjunctions (*dum, cum, ſi, quando, poſtquam*) as, *I being Captain, me duce*, i. e. *cum ego dux fuero, when I ſhall be Captain.*

Of Gerunds and Supines, &c.

GErunds, Supines and Participles (in the ſame reſpect) govern the ſame Caſes as the Verbs they come of; as, Utendum eſt ærate. Fruiturus amicis. Studium videndi parentes. Exoſus ſævitiam. Pertæſus ignaviam. Exoſus Deo & Sanctis 1.

Gerundia, ſive Gerundivæ voces, & Supina regunt caſus ſuorum verborum.

Participia regunt caſus ſuorum verborum.

Exóſus, peroſus, pertæſus, activè ſignificant, & in Accuſativum feruntur. At ſi paſſivè ſignificant cum dandi caſu leguntur.

Gerunds may be turned into Adjectives and agree with the Caſes they ſeemed to govern, Generandi copia mellis. Ad accuſandos homines. Criminibus inferendis adeo delectaris 2.

Vertuntur Gerundiæ voces in Nomina Adjectiva.

Gerunds in di may have after them a Genitive caſe Plural very elegantly; as, Date creſcendi copiam novarum. Conceſſa eſt licentia diripiendi pomorum & opſoniorum.

Interdum non invenuſtè adjicitur Gerundii vocibus, etiam Genitivus pluralis.

How to know the Caſe of the Subſtantive when an indeclinable word goeth before it.

The Conſtruction of the Adverb.

EN and ecce govern a Nominative Caſe, or

En & ecce demonſtrandi Adverbia Nominativo frequentiùs

1 Yea, even ſome Subſtantives require the Caſe of the Verbs they come of; as, *Traditio alteri. Domum reditionis ſpe ſuſtitatâ.*

2 Gerunds in *di* when they become Adjectives change the word following into the Genitive Caſe; in *do* into an Ablative; in *dum* into an Accuſative, as, in the Examples in the Rule.

3 When to uſe the Nominative, and when the Accuſative is beſt known by the Verb underſtood; as, *En turba*, i. e. *en adeſt turba*; *en aras*, i. e. *en video aras*.

an

an Accuſative; as, Ecce Priamus, En habitum 3.

junguntur; Accuſativo raro. En, & ecce exprobrantis ſoli accuſativo.

Adverbs of Quantity 6, Time 5 and Place 4 require a Genitive Caſe: as, Multum lucri. Tunc temporis. Ubi gentium.

Quædam Adverbia Loci, Temporis, & Quantitatis, Genitivum poſt ſe recipiunt.

Certain Adverbs derived of Adjectives or Prepoſitions, govern the ſame Caſes as the words whereof they were derived; as, Venit obviam illi. Canit ſimiliter huic. Proximè Hiſpaniam.

Quædam Dativum admittunt Nominum unde deducta ſunt.

Sunt quæ accuſandi caſum admittunt præpoſitionis unde ſunt profecta.

Adverbia Comparativi & Superlativi gradûs admittunt caſus Comparativis, &c.

The Conſtruction of the Conjunction.

COnjunctions copulative and disjunctive, and theſe four, quam, niſi, præterquam, an; do uſually couple like Caſes; as, Xenophon & Plato fuêre æquales. Utinam aut calidus eſſes aut frigidus.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ & Disjunctivæ, cum his quatuor, Quam, niſi, præterquam, an, omnino ſimiles caſus nectunt.

Sometimes the reaſon of Syntax requires them to be put between divers Caſes, as, Emi librum centuſſis & pluris. Vixi Romæ & Venetiis.

Excepto, ſi caſualis dictionis ratio aliqua privata, repugnet, vel aliud poſcat.

The Conſtruction of the Prepoſition.

THeſe thirty Prepoſitions govern an Accuſative Caſe. Ad, penes, adverſus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,

4 As, *Ubinam, nuſquam, eò, longe, quo, ubivis, huccine,* [alſo *minime gentium, no in no wiſe.*]

5 As, *nunc, tunc, interea, pridie, poſtridie.*

6 As, *parum, ſatis, abunde,* and *inſtar* (if an Adverb.)

Ergi,

Erga, apud, ante, ſecus, trans, ſupra, verſus & intra,
Ultra, poſt, præter, propter, prope, pone, ſecundum,
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra; As, Ad Calendas Græcas. Me penes. Ne Hercules quidem adverſus duos. Dicíque beatus, ante obitum nemo, &c.

Theſe fourteen Prepoſitions govern an Ablative Caſe A, ab, abſque, cum, coram, de, è, ex, palam, præ, pro, ſine, & tenus; which alſo admits a Genitive plural after which it is uſually placed; as, Ab alio expectas. Cum malâ famâ. Coram Senatu. Pube tenus. Pectoribus tenus. Crurum tenus.

Tenus gaudet Ablativo & ſingulari, & plurali.

At Genitivo tantùm plurali.

Theſe five Prepoſitions, ſubter, clam, in, ſub, & ſuper, govern an Accuſative and an Ablative Caſe; as, Subter terras. Subter denſâ teſtudine. Clam patre. Clam patrem.

Subter uno ſignificatu utrique caſui apud Authores jungitur.

But the three laſt in different ſignifications.

[In] ſignifying (*towards, againſt, into, or every*) requires an Accuſative Caſe; as, Accipit in Teucros mentem benignam. Quid in te committere potuit? An quo via ducit in urbem? Verſa eſt in cineres. Amor mihi creſcit in horas.

In pro erga, contra, ad, Accuſativum habet.

In cum Accuſativo jungitur, quoties diviſio, mutatio, aut incrementum rei, cum tempore ſignificatur.

[In] ſignifying (*in*) hath an Ablative onely; as, Scilicet ut fulvum ſpectatur in ignibus aurum.

In cum ſignificatur actus in loco, Ablativum poſtulat.

[Sub] ſignifying (*to, by, or before*, governs an Accuſative Caſe; as, Sub umbram properemus. Sub id tempus. Sub noctem.

Sub, pro ad, per & ante Accuſativo innititur.

[Sub] ſignifying (*under or in*) an Ablative; as, Sub nocte ſilenti. Sub terra.

Alias Ablativum admittit.

[Su-

[Super] for (ultra *beyond*) governs an Accuſative caſe; as, Super Garamantas & Indos proferet imperium.

Super pro ultra Accuſativo jungitur.

[Super] ſignifying (*concerning* or *upon*) hath an Ablative Caſe; as, Dixit multum ſuper ea re. Fronde ſuper viridi.

Super pro de & in Ablativo.

Prepoſitions in Compounded words often require the ſame caſe they did govern before; as, Exeo domo. Prætereo te inſalutatum.

Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem nonnunquam caſum regit, quem extra compoſitionem regebat.

Prepoſitions underſtood often govern the ſame caſes as if they were expreſſed; as, Habeo te loco Parentis, *i. e.* in loco. Id lachrymat virgo, *i. e.* propter id.

Præpoſitio ſubaudita interdum facit ut addatur Ablativus.

Verbs compounded with [a, ab, de, e, ex, in,] do elegantly repeat theſe Prepoſitions with their caſes; as, Abſtinuerunt à viris, cum ex inſidiis evaſeris. Cum legibus conferemus.

Verba compoſita cum (à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in,) nonnunquam repetunt eajdem Præpoſitiones cum ſuo caſu extra compoſitionem; idque eleganter.

The Conſtruction of the Interjection.

CErtain Interjections have caſes annex'd[1] to them: as follow.

Heu and O, a Nominative and an Accuſative; as, O feſtus dies hominis! O fortunatos nimium!

O exclamantis Nominativo, Accuſativo & Vocativo jungitur.

Hei and væ, a Dative; as, Hei mihi! Væ tibi miſeræ!

Hei & væ Dativo apponuntur.

1 Note here that modern Grammarians do not allow Interjections properly to govern Caſes; but that they are imperfect Sentences, and are to be ſupplied in this, or the like manner, *viz. O feſtus dies hominis!* i. e. *O quam eſt feſtus dies hominis! O fortunatos!* i. e. *O quam dicamus fortunatos. Heu pietas!* i. e. *heu quanta pietas! Væ tibi!* i. e. *magnum malum ſit tibi, &c.*

Ah,

Ah, vah, hem, and proh, an Accuſative; as, Proh deum atque hominum fidem! Hem Davum tibi!

Heu & proh nunc Nominativo, nunc Accuſativo adhærent.

Heus and Ohe, and many other words, when uſed in calling or ſpeaking to any one, require a Vocative caſe; as, Heus, bone vir!

Figures of Government.

When we meet with ſuch conſtructions as are not according to the foregoing Rules, we call them **Figures.**

The moſt obſervable Figures in Government are theſe five. Ellipſis, Pleonaſmus, Helleniſmus, Archaiſmus, and Hyperbaton.

1. Ellipſis. When a word that is neceſſary to make up the ſenſe is left out[2]; as, Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, (*ſubaudi* Templum.) Ego illud ſedulo negare factum, (*ſupple* cœpi.) Facile omnes perferre & pati, (*ſupple* ſolebat.) Redimitus tempora lauro, (*i. e.* circum tempora.) Non eſt ſolvendo, (*ſupple* idoneus.)

2. Pleonaſmus. When a word is redundant in a Sentence; as, Magis majores nugas agere. Plaut. (where magis is ſuperfluous.) Oportuit præſciſſe me ante, (ante redundant.) Nullam eſſe alteram, &c.

3. Helleniſmus. When we imitate the Greeks; as, Abſtine irarum. Guſtavit mellis. Audivit muſicæ. Da meus ocellus. Seu pius Æneas eripuiſſe ferunt.

4. Archaiſmus. When we find the conſtruction of the Ancients not now in uſe; as, Credo ego inimicos meos hoc dicturum. Quid tibi hanc rem curatio eſt? Faſtidit mei. Abſente nobis.

5. Hyperbaton. When words or Sentences are confuſedly tranſlated, out of all Grammatical order; as, Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras, *i. e.* Itali vocant aras ſaxa illa quæ ſunt in mediis fluctibus. So

[2] Here muſt be obſerved, that every perfect Sentence conſiſteth of a Nominant, a Verb, and one or more caſual words; when any of theſe are wanting, it makes an *Ellipſis*, and muſt neceſſarily be ſupplied.

Exul

Exul erat mundo donec miſerata vagantem,
Hoſpita tu terris erras. Ego, dixit, in undis,
Inſtabilémque locum Delos dedit, *i.e.* donec Delos miſerata vagantem dixit, tu hoſpita erras terris. Ego in undis, Inſtabilem, &c.

PROSODIA.

PRoſodia eſt, quæ rectam vocum pronunciationem tradit.
In Proſodia duo potiſſimùm ſunt conſideranda.
1. Ratio conſtituendi carminis: &,
2. Syllabarum Quantitas.

De Ratione conſtituendi Carminis.

EX Syllabis juſto ordine diſpoſitis fiunt pedes.
Eſt, igitur, pes duarum Syllabarum pluriumve conſtitutio, ex certa temporum obſervatione.
Pedes uſitatiores ſunt, vel diſſyllabi,
Spondæus, conſtans ex duabus Syllabis longis; ut vīrtūs.
Trochæus, ex longa & brevi, ut cōllĕ.
Iambus, ex brevi & longa, ut, ămāns.
Vel triſſyllabi, ut,
Dactylus ex tribus conſtans Syllabis, primâ longâ, reliquis duabus brevibus; ut, mittĕrĕ. Sic
Anapæſtus, Moloſſus, Tribrachus, &c. qui apud nos rariſſimè ſunt in uſu.
Pedes juſto ordine diſpoſiti carmen conſtituunt.
Eſt igitur Carmen Oratio juſto & legitimo pedum numero conſtricta.

Carminum Genera uſitatiora ſunt.

1. HExametrum, (quod etiam Heroicum dicitur) & conſtat pedibus numero quidem ſex, genere verò duobus, Dactylo & Spondæo. Quintus locus Dactylum, Sextus Spondæum peculiariter ſibi vendicat; reliqui hunc vel illum prout volumus; ut,

Titĕrĕ

Tītĕrĕ tū pătŭlæ rĕcŭbāns sūb tēgmĭnĕ fāgī.

Reperitur aliquando Spondæus etiam in quinto loco; ut,

Chara deûm ſoboles magnum Jovis incrementum.

2. Pentametrum, ſeu Elegiacum, quod conſtat duobus Dactylis aut Spondæis cum Syllaba longa; deinde duobus Dactylis cum Syllaba longa; ut,

Rēs ēſt sōllĭcĭtī plēnă tĭmōrĭs ămōr.

3. Aſclepiadæum conſtat ex Spondæo, Dactylo, & Syllabâ longâ, duobus deinde Dactylis; ut,

Mēcœnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs.

4. Sapphicum conſtat ex Trochæo, Spondæo, Dactylo, & duobus demum Trochæis; ut,

Jām sătīs tērrīs nĭvĭs ātquĕ dīræ.

In hoc carminis genere poſt tres verſus additur Adonicum, quod conſtat ex Dactylo & Spondæo; ut,

Integer vitæ ſceleriſque purus,
Non eget Mauri jaculis nec arcu;
Nec venenatis gravida ſagittis,
Fŭſcĕ phărētrā.

5. Phaleucium, ſive Hendecaſyllabum, quod conſtat ex Spondæo, Dactylo, & tribus tandem Trochæis; ut,

Quōquō dīffŭgĭās păvēns Măbĭlĭ.

6. Iambicum, quod è ſolis conſtat Iambis; ut,

Sŭīs ĕt ĭpsă Rōmă vīrĭbŭs rŭĭt.

De Quantitate.

QUantitas tempus eſt, vel ſpatium illud, ſive mora quâ ſyllaba profertur.

Syllaba vel longa eſt, & ſic notatur, *audāx*, vel brevis, ſic, *bĕnĕ*. Sunt & quædam communes, modo ſcilicet longæ, modo breves; ut, *patris, volucris.*

Regulæ Generales de Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

I. VOcalis ante duas conſonantes aut duplicem in eadem dictione, ubique poſiturâ longa eſt; ut, *Ventus, axis, patrizo.*

Quod

Quod ſi Conſonans priorem dictionem claudat, ſequente item à conſonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam poſitione longa erit; ut,

Major ſum quàm cui poſſit fortuna nocere 1.

EXCEPTIONES.

1. Vocalis brevis ante Mutam ſequente Liquidâ communis redditur, ut *patris*, *volucris*. Longa verò non mutatur; ut, *arātrum*.

2. *Bĭjugus*, *quadrĭjugus*, & reliqua à *jugo* compoſita vocalem ante (j) frequentiùs corripiunt.

II. Vocalis ante alteram in diverſis ſyllabis ejuſdem dictionis ubique brevis eſt; ut, *Dĕus*, *filĭus*, *tŭus*.

Excep.

1. Excipias Genitivos in (*ĭus*;) ut, *unius*, *illius*, ubi (*i*) communis reperitur; licèt in *alterĭus* ſemper ſit brevis, in *alīus* ſemper longa.

2. Excipiendi ſunt etiam Genitivi & Dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3. *Fio* habet *ī* longum, niſi ſequatur *er*; ut, *Fīam*, *Fīer*, &c.

4. *Ohe* & *io* priorem habent communem.

5. In Vocativis Propriorum in *ei*, & *ai*; ut, *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, penultima producitur, ut & in Genitivis primæ declinationis apud priſcos ſolutis; ut, *Pictāi*, *aulāi*.

6. Vocalis etiam ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus, ſubinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pīerides*. *Reſpice Lāerten*. [Sic etiam in antepenultima Poſſeſſivorum in *ēius* & *ōius*; & penultimis deſinentium in *ōus*; ut, *Rhodopēius*. *Achelōius*, *Latōus*.

III. Omnis Diphthongus apud Latinos, Syllabæ ex duabus contractæ, & Syllabæ circumflexæ, longæ ſunt; ut, *Aūrum*, *neūter*. *Musâ*, *manûs*. *Cūi*, *dii*. *Legêre*, *fuêrunt*, &c.

Præ tamen in Compoſitione, ſequente Vocali, corripitur; ut, *Præuſtus*, *præamplus*.

IV. Derivativa & Compoſita Simplicium & Primitivorum quantitatem ſequuntur; ut, *ămator*, *ămicus*, *ămabilis*, primâ brevi ab *ămo*. Sic *pŏtens*, *impŏtens*. *Sŏlor*, *conſŏlor*. *Lĕgo*, *perlĕgo*.

1 At ſi prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, ſequente à duobus Conſonantibus incipiente, interdum ſed rarius producitur.

Servatur

Servatur quantitas etiamſi vocalis mutetur; ut, *Elĭgo* à *lĕgo*, *occĭdo* à *cădo*, *occīdo* à *cædo*, *obēdio* ab *ob* & *audio*, &c.

Excep.

1. Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta primam producunt; ut, *Mŏbilis* à *moveo*, *tēgula* à *tĕgo* 1.

2. Sunt & contra quæ à longis deducta corripiuntur; ut, *Fĭdes* à *Fīdo*, *Vădum* à *vādo*, &c 2.

3. Hæc à ſimplicibus longis orta corripiuntur, *Dejero* & *pejero* à *juro*, *innuba* & *pronuba* à *nubo*, &c. 3.

V. Ex Præpoſitionibus hæ ubique producuntur, (*à*, *de*, *ſe*, *è*, *di*, *pro*;) Reliquæ corripiuntur, ſi poſitio ſinat.

Excep.

1. *Pro* nonnunquam corripitur; ut in his, *prŏfundus*, *prŏfugus*, *pronepos*, *profeſtus*, *profari*, *profiteor*, &c 4.

Nonnunquam communis reperitur; ut in his, *Procumbo*, *procurro*, *propello*, *profundo*, *propulſo*, *propago-as*.

2. *Di* corripitur in *dirimo* & *diſertus*.

VI. Omne Præteritum & Supinum diſſyllabum priorem habet longam; ut, *Lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōtum*, *lātum*. Sic etiam Polyſyllaba in *ivi* & *ifi*, producunt penultimam; ut, *Audīvi*, *divīſi*.

Excep.

1. *Bibi*, *dedi*, *ſcidi*, *ſteti*, *tuli*, & *fidi* à *findo*.

2. *Quitum*, *ſitum*, *litum*, *itum*, *rutum*, *ratum*, *datum*, *ſatum*, *citum* à *cieo*, *catum* ab antiquo *cavi*, quæ omnia corripiunt priorem.

VII. Primam præteriti geminantia, primam itidem brevem habent; ut, *Cĕcĭni*, *tĕtĭgi*. Sæpiùs etiam corripiunt ſecundam (ſi poſitio ſinat,) niſi in *Cēcīdi* à *cædo*, & *pepēdi* à *pedo*.

1. *Sic* Fomes à foveo, macero à macer, ſtipendium à ſtipo, jugerum à jugum, laterna à lateo, regula à rego, lex legis à lego, humanus ab humus, denus à decem, vomer à vomo, penuria à penus, ſedes à ſedeo, litera à lino, vox vocis à voco, nonus à novem, jucundus à juvo, ſecius à ſecus, &c.

2. *Sic* Lucerna à luceo, ſopor à ſopio, dicax à dico, fragor fragilis à frango, figillum à ſignum, vitium à vito, dux ducis à duco, diſertus à diſero, fidelis à fido, ariſta ab aro, bubulcus à bubus, ſagax à ſagio, ſtatio ſtatus ſtabilis à ſtatum.

3. *Sic* Semiſopitus à ſopitus, nihilum à ne & hilum, maledicus, cauſidicus à dico, cognitum & agnitum à notum; compoſita in itum à ſtatum; ut, præſtitum.

4 *Sic* Proneptis, profanus, profecto, procella, protervus, proficiſcor, propero, profugio.

VIII. Su-

VIII. Supina in *tum* polyſyllaba præcedente (*u*) habent penultimam longam; ut, *ſolūtum, argūtum:* Item in *itum* à præteritis in *ivi*; ut, *cupītum, petītum.*

Sin ſupina in *itum* formantur à præteritis in *ui*, vel in *j* præcedente conſonante, habent penultimam brevem; ut, *Monui monitum, credidi creditum, præſtiti præſtitum.*

Regulæ ſpeciales de mediis 1 *Syllabis.*

De Incremento Nominis ſingulari.

1. INcrementa ſecundæ declinationis corripiuntur; ut, *Miſer, miſĕri; Vir, vĭri;* Exc. *Iber, ibēri,* cum compoſitis.

2. *A* incrementum ſingulare tertiæ declinationis, longum eſt; ut, *Vectigal, vectigālis; pietas, pietātis; calcar, calcāris.*

Corripe tamen Maſculina in *al* & *ar*; ut, *Hannibălis, Amilcăris*; ſic *par* cum compoſitis; item Græca in *a* & *as*; ut, *Stemma, ſtemmătis; Pallas, palläd is.* Et quæ habent conſonantem ante (*s*;) ut *Trabs, trăbis*; ſic *Fax, ſtyrax, drtophylax*, & alia compoſita à *philax, ſmilax* & *climax*, & alia quædam inuſitata, *dropax, colax*, &c.

3. *E* incrementum tertiæ declinationis breve eſt; ut, *Grex, grĕgis*; *teres, terĕtis.*

Excep. *Iber Ibēris*, & Genitivus *ēnis* penultimam habet longam, ut, *Ren, rēnis*; [*Hymen, hymēnis* corripitur.]

Producuntur etiam *Ver, vēris*; *manſues, manſuētis*; *locuples, hæres, merces, quies, rex, vervex, præs, fex, ſeps, plebs, halex.* Item peregrina in *el*, ut, *Michael*; & Græca in *er* & *es*, ut, *Crater, cratēris*; *tapes, tapētis*; præter *aer* & *æther.*

4. *I* vel *y* incrementum tertiæ declinationis breve eſt, ut, *Stirps, ſtirpis*; *chalybs, chalybis.*

Excep. Genitivus in *inis* vel *ynis*, à nominibus Græcis penultimam producit, ut, *Delphin, delphīnis*; *Phorcyn, phorcynis.* Item *Dis, dītis*; *vibex, vibīcis*; *glis, glīris*; *gryps, gryphis*; *ſamnis, ſamnītis*; *neſis, neſidis, apſidis*, &c. Nomina etiam in *ix* vel *yx* penultimam genitivi habent longam, ut, *felix, felīcis*; *bombyx, bombycis.* Corripiuntur autem *Hiſtrix, hiſtrĭcis*; *fornix,*

1 Mediæ Syllabæ hic cenſentur omnes, præter primam & ultimam.

fornĭcis; *pix*, *nix*, *salix*, *mastix mastĭchis*, *onyx*, *calix*, *varix*, *coxendix*, *larix*, *japix*, *natrix*, *stix*, *strix*; & propria quædam, ut, *Ambiorix*, &c. *appendix* & *bombyx* variantur.

5. *O* incrementum tertiæ declinationis in latinis nominibus longum est; ut, *sol sōlis*, *vox vōcis*.

Excep. Græca in *on* 1 quæ in obliquis habent *omicron* corripiuntur; ut, *syndon syndŏnis*, *amazon*,-*ŏnis*.

Genitivus in *oris* à Nominibus latinis Neutris; ut *Ebur*, *ebŏris*; Composita à πους ποδὸς, ut, *tripus*, *tripŏdis*. Item, *memor*, *arbor*, *lepus*, *bos*, *compos*, *impos*, *Cappadox*, *Allabrox*, *præcox*, & quæ consonantem habent ante *s*, ut, *scobs*, *scabis*, penultimam incrementi habent brevem. Sed *os ŏris*, & Comparativ. gradus, *Cyclops*, *cecrops*, *hydrops*, incrementum longum habent.

6. *V* incrementum breve est, ut, *murmur murmŭris*.

Excep. Gignendi casus *udis*, *utis*, *uris*, à nominibus in *us*, ut, *palus palūdis*, *virtus virtūtis*, *tellus tellūris*. Item *fur fūris*, *pollux*, *lux*, & *frūgis* penultimam incrementi habent longam.

De plurali Nominis Incremento.

A *E*, *O*, incrementa pluralia longa sunt; ut, *quārum*, *rērum*, *bōvum*, *ambābus*.

I & *V* incrementa pluralia corripiuntur, ut, *quĭbus*, *trĭbus*, *montĭbus*, *lacŭbus*, *verŭbus* 2.

De Verborum Incremento.

INcrementum verbi est quando secunda persona præsentis Indicativi superatur Syllabarum numero, ut, *amas amamus*, *doces docemus* 3.

1. *A* in omni verborum incremento producitur, ut, *stābam*, *amābam*.

Excep. *Do* cum compositis *a* primum incrementum corripiunt, ut, *dămus*, *circumdămus*, *dăre*, *venundăre*.

2. *E* verborum incrementum frequentius producitur, ut, *flēbam*, *docērent*.

1 Latini interdum *n* literam omittunt; ut, *Macedo Macedonis*; *Brito Britonis*.

2 *Bubus u* habet commune.

3 Ultima Syllaba nunquam est incrementum, prima verò est, si norma ipsa sit monosyllaba; ut, *das damus dare*, *fles flemus flere*.

Excep.

Excep. *E* ante *r* breve eſt in quovis præſenti, & imperfecto tertiæ Conjugationis, ut, *cognoſcĕre, legĕrem, legĕris* vel *legĕre*: *Beris* etiam & *bere* corripitur, ut, *celebraběris, celebrabĕre*; *reris* tamen & *rere* producitur, ut, *loquerēris, proſequerēre*; *vĕlim, vĕlis, vĕlit*, &c. breviantur.

E ante *ram, rim, ro*, corripitur, ut, *amavĕram, amavĕrim, amavĕro.*

3. *I* in quovis verborum incremento corripitur, ut, *linquĭmus, amabĭmus, audiebamĭni, venĭmus, comperĭmus*, in præteritis.

Excep. *I* longum habent *nolīto, nolītote, nolīmus, nolītis*; *velīmus, velītis*; *sīmus, sītis*; & quæ ex ipſis componuntur; ut, *poſſīmus, adſimus.*

Penultima præteriti in *ivi* & *iſi* longa eſt, (ut ſuprà,) & primum incrementum quartæ conjugationis, ut, *ibam, ibo*; *reperīmus, audīmus, venīmus* præſentis temporis.

In Potentiali, penultimæ *rimus* & *riti* futuri communes habentur; præteriti, breves.

4. *O* in verborum incrementis ſemper producitur, ut, *facitote.*

5. *U* in verborum incrementis ubique corripitur; ut, *sŭmus, volŭmus.*

Excep. *U* penultima participii in *rus* ſemper eſt longa, ut, *amatūrus, doctūrus.*

De Adjectivis in *inus.*

ADjectiva in *inus* latina penultimam producunt, ut, *clandeſtīnus, mediaſtīnus.*

Hæc tamen ſequentia penultimam corripiunt, *diutĭnus, craſtĭnus, priſtĭnus, perendĭnus, hornotĭnus, ſerotĭnus, oleagĭnus, fagĭnus, cedrĭnus, carbaſinus.* Sic etiam materialia, ſive à metallorum nominibus formata, qualia ſunt permulta à Græcis vocibus deducta, ut, *cryſtallĭnus, myrrhĭnus, adamantĭnus*, & his ſimilia.

Regulæ Generales de ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

I. VOces quæ à Græcis mutuantur, Græcorum regulas sequuntur [1]: ut, *O Thoma, Lethē, Palladī, Pylōn*, &c.

II. Monosyllaba in [*e, o, is, us,*] producuntur; ut, *me, sto, lis, mus.* Excipe *is, bis, quis,* & *que, ne, ve,* conjunctiones encliticas, Item Syllabicas adjectiones, *ple, ce, te,* ut, *tuaptĕ, tutĕ*, &c.

III. [*O*] finita communia sunt, ut, *amo, virgo, porro, docendo.*

Excep.

1. Præter obliquos casus, qui semper producuntur, ut, *Dominō, servō, templō.*

2. Adverbia ab Adjectivis derivata, ut, *tantō, quantō*; sic *adeò, ideò,* & *ergô* (*pro causâ*) quæ longa sunt. At *sedulò, mutuò, crebrò, serò, verò,* sunt communia: Et *modŏ, quomodŏ, citŏ, cedŏ, imŏ,* semper corripiuntur.

His etiam accedunt *ambo, duo, ego, homo, nescio, scio,* quæ vix leguntur producta.

IV. Finita in *a, c, i, n, as, es, os,* & *u,* producunt.

Excep.

1. In *a, Putà, ita, quia, eja, postea,* & omnes casus in *a* (præter Ablativos primæ declinationis) quæ corripiuntur; & Nmeralia in *ginta,* quæ sunt communia.

2. In *c, hic, nec, donec,* brevia. *Fac, hic, hoc,* communia (modò *hoc* non sit Ablativi casus.)

3. In *i, nisi, quasi, sicuti,* brevia. *Mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi,* communia.

4. In *n, in, an, tamen, forsan, forsitan,* cum compositis, ut, *veruntamen, exin*; item quæ per Apocopen castrantur, ut, *viden, vin*; Nomina etiam in *en* quorum Genitivus *inis* correptum habent, ut, *carmen, pecten,* quæ omnia corripiuntur.

5. In *as, es.* Nomina tertiæ inflexionis in *es,* quæ penultimam Genitivi crescentis corripiunt, ut, *milĕs, legĕs, divĕs. Es* à *sum,* cum compositis, ut, *potĕs, adĕs, prodĕs,* item *penĕs, vās vadis, amŭs,* brevia.

1 Sed *pater, frater, mater,* corripiunt ultimam, *chiragra* primam.

6. In

6. In *os*. *Compŏs, impŏs, ŏs oſſis.*

V. Finita in *b, d, t, e, l, r, is, us*, corripiuntur.

Excep.

1. In *e*. 1. Ablativus quintæ inflexionis, ut, *diē, fidē*, unà cum Adverbiis inde enatis, *hodiē, quotidiē*. 2. Imperativi ſingularis ſecundas perſonas, ſecundæ conjugationis, ut, *docē, movē*. 3. Adverbia ab Adjectivis derivata, ut, *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* (*pro validē*,) ſic *fermē, ferē*. Sed corripiuntur *benĕ, malĕ*.

2. In *l*. *Nīl, sōl*; & Hebræa quædam in *el*, ut, *Michaēl, Gabriēl, Daniēl*, quæ ultimam producunt.

3. In *r*. Finita in *er*, quæ faciunt *ēris* in genitivo; ut, *aēr, vēr*; Item *Fār, lār, nār, cār, pār*, cum compoſitis, *compār, impār, diſpār*.

4. In *is*. 1. Obliquos plurales, ut, *musīs, mensīs*. 2. Producentia penultimam genitivi creſcentis, ut, *ſamnis ſamnītis, ſalamis ſalamīnis*. Et ſecundas ſingulares verborum, quorum ſecundæ plurales definunt in *ītis*, ut, *audis, velis*, &c.

5. In *us*. Producentia penultimam Genitivi creſcentis, ut, *ſalūs ſalūtis, tellūs telluris*. Et omnes caſus quartæ inflexionis in *ūs*, præter Nominativos & Vocativos ſingulares, ut, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, has manūs*, &c.

VI. Ultima cujuſque verſus ſyllaba communis habetur.

De Scanſione ejusque Accidentibus.

SCanſio eſt legitima Carminis in ſingulos pedes commenſuratio.

Scanſioni accidunt Synalœpha, Eclipſis, Synæreſis, Diæreſis, Syſtole & Diaſtole.

1. Synalœpha eſt ellſio quædam vocalis ante alteram in diverſis dictionibus, ut,

Sera nimis vit' eſt craſtina, viv' hodie.

Heu & *o* non intercipiuntur. (*o* & aliæ vocales longæ more & licentiâ Græcorum modò retinent quantitatem integram, modò alterum è temporibus amittunt.)

2. Eclipſis eſt quoties (*m*) cum ſuâ vocali perimitur, proxima dictione à vocali exorſâ, ut,

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, cui lumen ademptum,
[*pro monstrum horrendum informe.*]

3. Synæresis est duarum Syllabarum in unam contractio; ut,
Seu lento fuerint alvâria vimine texta. pro *alvearia.*

4. Diæresis est ubi ex una syllaba diffecta fiunt duæ, ut,
Debuerant fusos evolvïisse suos. pro *evolvisse.*

5. Systole cum syllaba longa corripitur, ut,
Obstupuit stetĕrúntque comæ, & vox faucibus hæsit.

6. Diastole brevem producit, ut,
Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consulit exta.

PARA-

PARALIPOMENA,

OR

Rules for knowing the Genders of Common Nouns by their Termination. For Heteroclites. For the Conſtruction and Signification of Prepoſitions. For Pointing, and Accenting. And for doubtfull Quantities: By way of Supplement, or Appendix.

CHAP. I.

Rules for knowing the Genders of Nouns by their Terminations in the Declenſions.

Declenſion 1.

NOuns of the firſt Declenſion in a, are of the Feminine Gender; as, Muſa, roſa, terra.

But Greek words in as and es, and ſuch as are formed of them in a, are Maſculines, as, hic Satrapas, Satrapæ. Athletes, athletæ. So adria, cometa, and planeta.

Declenſion 2.

NOuns of the ſecond Declenſion in er, os, and us, are of the Maſculine Gender, as, hic liber, logos, annus.

Except,

1. Humus, domus, alvus, vannus, colus; Alſo ſome Nouns formed from the Greeks by changing os into us, as, papyrus, ſynodus, diphthongus, and ſuch like, which are Feminines.

2. Barbitus, balanus, groſſus, phaſelus which are Maſculine or Feminine.

3. Chaos, pelagus, virus, which are Neuters; vulgus Maſculine and Neuter.

Declenſion 3.

NOuns of the third Declenſion in o, er, or, os, an, in, on, are of the Maſculine Gender, as, ſermo, venter, honor, &c.

Except,

1. Nouns in do or go of more than two Syllables, as, dulcedo, compago. Nouns in io, which come of verbs, as, petitio, oratio. Alſo ditio, communio, ſeditio, talio, conditio, perduellio, portio, rebellio, caro, grando, linter, arbor, cos, dos, ſindon, icon, which are Feminines.

2. Cadaver, iter, tuber, uber, gingiber, laſer, cicer, ſiſer, piper, papaver, ver, laver, ſpinther, æquor, ador, marmor, cor, os, and epos, which are Neuters.

In as, aus, es, is, us, s impure, and x, are of the Feminine Gender, as, Lampas, fraus, &c.

Except.

1. Elephas, adamas, ames, caſpes, fames, gurges, limes, ceſpes, palmes, pes, paries, poples, ſtipes, termes, trames, tudes, ſanguis, lienis, orbis, callis, caulis, colis, follis, collis, menſis, enſis, fuſtis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, ignis, caſſis, faſcis, torris, ſentis, piſcis, unguis, vermis, vectis, poſtis, axis, acinacis, amnis, anguis, aquallis, cenchris (*a ſerpent,*) glis (*a dormouſe,*) pallis, vepris, cucumis, lapis, mugilis, pulvis, unicornis, mons, pons, fons, rudens, hydrops, calix, calyx,

lyx, fornix, grex, ſpadix, varix, urpix. Nouns of two Syllables, in ax and ex. Nouns in es derived of words in *ns*, as, tapes, labes, all which are Maſculines.

2. Vas vaſis, æs, hippomanes, cacoethes, panaces, nepenthes, atriplex, which are Neuters.

In *a*, e, c, l, t, en, ar, ur, and us are Neuters.

Except,

1. Sal, mugil, ſol, lichen, ſplen, lien, ren, pecten, hymen, attagen, ſalar, turtur, vultur, furfur, mus, lepus, and the compounds of πούς, (except lagopus) which are Maſculines.

2. Palus, tellus, pecus pecudis, virtus, juventus, ſervitus, ſenectus, incus, ſubſcus, ſalus, &c. which are Feminines.

Declenſion 4.

NOuns of the fourth Declenſion in us are of the Maſculine Gender, as, hic habitus, gradus, ſucceſſus.

Except,

1. Porticus, tribus, manus, idus, ficus, acus, which are Feminines.

2. Penus and ſpecus, Maſculine or Feminine.

Nouns in u are Neuters, as, hoc cornu, genu.

Declenſion 5.

NOuns of the fifth Declenſion end all in es, and are of the Feminine Gender, as, facies, ſpecies.

Except meredies which is Maſculine; and dies which is Maſculine or Feminine in the ſingular, and in the plural Maſculine onely.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Nouns which are irregular in their declining, commonly called Heteroclites.

HEteroclites are of three sorts,

1. Variants, which do otherwise than the Rule directs.

2. Defectives, which want some Cases or Number which the usual way of declining doth require.

3. Redundants, which in some Cases abound in terminations.

§ 1. Of Variants.

VAriants are of Four sorts. 1. In Case. 2. In Gender. 3. In Declension. 4. In both Gender and Declension.

I. Variants in Case are such as are declined with cases borrowed from other words as, Jupiter, Gen. Jovis, &c. Jecur, Gen. jecoris, vel jecinoris, vel jocinoris. Iter, Gen. itineris.

II. Variants in Gender, are such as have one Gender in the Singular number, and another in the Plural, which are of five sorts.

1. Masculines in the Singular, and Neuters in the Plural; as, Sing. Avernus, Pl. Averna. Sing. Dindimus, Pl. Dindima. So Ismar-us -a. Mænal-us -a. Massic-us -a. Pangæ-us -a. Tænar-us -a. Tartar-us -a. Tayget-us -a.

2. Masculines in the Singular, and Masculines and Neuters in the Plural; as, Jocus, Pl. jo-ci and -ca. Locus, Pl. lo-ci and -ca. Sibilus, Pl. sibi-li and -la.

3. Feminines in the Singular, and Neuters in the Plural; as. Carbasus, Pl. carbasa. Pergamus, Pl. -a. Supellex, Pl. supellectilia.

4. Neu=

4. Neuters in the Singular, and Maſculines in the Plural; as, Argos, Pl. Argi. Cœlum, Pl. cœli. Siſer, Pl. ſiſeres.

5. Neuters in the Singular, and Maſculines and Neuters in the Plural; as, Frænum, Pl. -ni & -na. Roſtrum, Pl. roſtri and roſtra.

III. Variants in Declenſion are ſuch as are of one Declenſion in the Singular Number, of another in the Plural; as, Sing. Juger-um-i, of the ſecond. Pl. juger-a, jugerum of the third. Sing. Vas vaſis of the third. Plu. vaſa vaſorum of the ſecond.

IV. Variants both in Gender and Declenſion, are,

1. Feminines of the firſt Declenſion in the Singular number, and Neuters of the ſecond Declenſion in the Plural; as, Sing. Hieroſolym-a-æ, Pl. Hieroſoly-ma -morum.

2. Neuters of the ſecond Declenſion in the Singular number, and Feminines of the firſt in the Plural; as, Sing. Delici-um -i, Plu. delici-æ -a -rum. Sing. Nundin-um-i, Plur. Nundi-næ-narum. So epulum and balneum, which laſt is ſometimes read in the Neuter in the Plural number.

§ 2. Of Defectives.

DEfectives are of three ſorts. 1. In Declenſion. 2. In Caſe. 3. In Number.

1. Of Defectives in Declenſion.

DEfectives in Declenſion (commonly called Aptotes) are ſuch as are not declined at all, but under one Termination, have the Signification and Conſtruction of divers Caſes; as,

Sing. Nom. and Voc. Expes, potis. Nom. Accuſ. and Abl. mane, gelu. Nom. Acc. and Voc. Fas, nefas, nil, nihil, inſtar, neceſſe, neceſſum, volupe, Aſtu *a City*. Theſe want the Plural number.

But cornu, genu, veru, gauſape, præſepe, and mille the Subſtantive, being Aptotes in the ſingular number are perfect in the Plural.

Plur.

Plur. Nom. Acc. Voc. grates, cete, tempe. The Adjectives tot, quot, with their compounds. Nouns of number from three to an hundred, as, quatuor, quinque, &c. and also mille the Adjective, have under one Termination the construction of all or most cases Plural: But wholly want the Singular number.

Sing. and Plur. Nom. and Accus. Opus need. So the Adjective nequam, and also cœpe, pondo, gummi, sinapi, semi, and such like words in i, under one Termination supply the turn of most Cases in both numbers.

2. Of Defectives in Case.

DEfectives in Case are of five sorts, Monoptotes, Diptotes, Triptotes, Tetraptotes, and Pentaptotes.

1. Monoptotes are such as have the Termination and construction of onely one Case; as,

Sing. { Gen. Nauci, dicis, hujusmodi, ejusmodi, cujusmodi. Abl. Noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, prompcu, permissu, rogatu, &c.

Plur. Acc. Inficias, ineitas, and incita. Abl. ingratiis.

2. Diptotes are such as have the termination of two cases onely; as,

Sing. Nom. Vesper, Abl. vespere and vesperi. Nom. and Acc. plus, Gen. pluris. Nom. and Acc. Tantundem, Gen. tantidem. Gen. Spontis, Abl. sponte. Gen. Jugeris. Abl. jugere. Gen. Verberis, Abl. verbere. Gen. Impetis, Abl. impete. Gen. Tabi, Abl. tabo. Of these Plus, jugeris, and verberis are perfect in the plural number, the rest have no cases but these set down.

Plur. Nom. Suppetiæ, Acc. suppetias. Gen. Repetundarum. Abl. repetundis.

3. Triptotes are such as have onely three cases, as, Sing. Nom. Dica, Acc. dicam, Plur. Acc. dicas. Sing. Gen. Opis, Acc. opem, Abl. ope. Gen. Dapis, Acc. dapem, Abl. dape. Gen. Sordis, Acc. sordem, Abl. sorde. These are perfect in the plural number.

4. Tetraptotes are such as have but four cases onely; as, Frugis, ditionis, precis, proceris, and vicis, which want the Nominative and Vocative singular.

5. Pen-

5. Pentaptotes are ſuch as have but five caſes; as, 1. Vis wants the Dat. ſing. but vires its plural is perfect.

2. Thoſe words want the Vocative caſe in both numbers to which Speech cannot be directed; viz. all Pronouns, except noſter, noſtras, meus, and tu; alſo quis, qualis, quantus, quotus; ullus, uter, alter, alius; nullus, neuter, and nemo.

3. Of Defectives in Number.

DEfectives in number are either Singulars wanting the Plural; or Plurals wanting the Singular.

Singulars wanting the plural number are,

1. Proper names, denoting onely one; as, Mars, Cato, Roma, Parnaſſus, Bucephalus, Lælaps, &c.

2. Moſt names of, 1. Corn and Pulſe, as, Triticum, ador, ciſer, &c. 2. Things ſold by weight; as, Piper, ſaccharum, butyrum, &c. 3. Herbs; as, Ruta, ſalvia, &c. with their fruits; as, Aniſum, anethum, &c. 4. Liquors; as, Lac, oleum, nectar, &c. 5. Metals and Minerals; as, aurum, ferrum, &c. Sulphur, nitrum, &c. 6. Vertues and Vices; as, Caſtitas, avaritia, &c. 7. Ages; as, Adoleſcentia, ſenectus, &c.

But note that the uſe of Authours in theſe is to be obſerved; for,

Proper names are uſed in the plural number, 1. If they refer to more of the ſame name; as, Decem Cæſares, &c. 2. Or reſpect onely likeneſs; as, Sint Mecœnates, non deerunt Marones. 3. Or have no ſingular, as it often happens in proper names of places; as, Thebæ, Athenæ, &c. Locri, Gabii.

And under the other heads, ſome words are found in the plural number; as, 1. Hordea, farra, fabæ, lupini, piſi, avenæ, and zizania, which is plural onely. 2. Thura, pices, ceræ. 3. Cardui, urticæ, &c. Roſæ, lilia, and 4. Mella, mulſa, defruta, aquæ, vina, muſta. 5. Ara, orichalca. 6. Inſaniæ-as; iræ, irarum, iras; perfidiæ, veritates, &c.

A Ca-

A Catalogue of Nouns wanting the Plural Number, or having onely ſuch Caſes in it, as are here ſet down.

Maſculines. Aer, æther, ceſtus, (*a Woman's Girdle,*) fimus, heſperus, limus, meridies, metus, mundus, (*Woman's decking,*) muſcus, nemo, penus, pontus, pudor, ros. Pl. rores, and roribus, ſanguis, ſopor, veſper, and veſperus, viſcus.

Feminines. Bilis, cholera, fama, fames, fuga, ætas, humus, indoles, labes-es, lues, lux, (*light,*) nex, paupertas, pituita, pix, pl. pices, plebs, proles, pubes, quies, pl. quietes, and quietibus, requies, ſalus, pl. ſalutes, ſitis, ſoboles, pl.-es, -ibus, tabes, talio, pl. taliones, -num, tellus, terra, (*the Element of Earth*) tuſſes, pl. tuſſibus. Alſo Nouns of the fifth Declenſion, have rarely any other termination in the plural, ſave onely es; except res, ſpecies, facies, acies and dies, which have all their caſes.

Neuters. Album, barathrum, callum, cœnum, crocum, ebur, faſcinum, fel, forum-a, gluten, hepar, jubar, juſtitium, Lethum, nihilum, nitrum, penum, pelagus, pus, ſal, ſalum, ſiler, ver, virus, viſcum, vitrum, vulgus.

Plurals wanting the ſingular number, are,

1. Many names of Cities; as, Gabii, Philippi, Thebæ, Suſa, Bactra, &c.
2. Names of Games or Exerciſes; as, Apollinares, Olympia, &c.
3. Names of Feaſts; as, Bacchanalia, Saturnalia, &c.
4. Names of Books; as, Georgica, Bucolica, Biblia, &c.
5. Cardinal numbers, excepting one; as, Duo, tres, quatuor, &c.
6. Diſtributives; as, Bini, terni, quaterni, &c.

A Catalogue of Nouns wanting the Singular Number.

Maſculines. Antes, cancelli, faſti, lemures, liberi, manes, menſes, majores, minores, natales, and Penates.

Feminines. Antiæ, apinæ, calendæ, clitellæ, cunæ, diræ, divitiæ, excubiæ, exequiæ, exuviæ, feriæ, fatæ, fortunæ, (*an eſtate*) gerræ, grates, idus, induciæ, inferiæ, inſidiæ, lactes, manubiæ, minæ (*threatnings,*) nonæ, nugæ, nuptiæ, opes (*wealth,*) phaleræ, plagæ, primitiæ, quiſquiliæ, ſcopæ (*a beſome,*)

ſome,) tenebræ, thermæ, tricæ, valvæ, and ſuch like.

Neuters. Arma, bellaria, caſtra, cete, comitia (*an aſſembly,*) crepundia, cunabula, effata, exta, juſta, lautia, luſtra (*dens,*) mœnia, magalia, mapalia, munia, parapherna, præbia, præcordia, rapicia, repotia, roſtra (*a Pulpit, or pleading place,*) ſponſalia, and teſqua.

§ III. Of Redundants.

REdundants are of two ſorts: 1. Such as have two or more terminations in the Nominative caſe, ſignifying all the ſame thing; as, Baculus, baculum, and bacillum, *a ſtaff*; tonitrus and tonitru, *thunder*; clypeus and clypeum, *a buckler*; [*of which ſee* Veſſ. de Analog. lib. 1. c. 35. Danel. Schol. lib. 2. c. 10, &c.]

2. Such as having but one termination in the nominative caſe, yet are declined after two Declenſions.

1. Some are of the firſt and third; Nom. Oreſtes, Gen. Oreſtæ and Oreſtis. N. Orontes, G. Oron-tæ and -tis. N. Laches, G. Lach-æ-etis. N. Thal-es, G. Thal-æ-etis. N. Calchas, G. Calchæ and Calchantis. N. Paſcha, G. Paſchæ, and Paſchatis, &c.

2. Some are of the ſecond and third; as, N. Sequeſter, G. Sequeſtri and Sequeſtris. N. Oedipus, G. Oedi-pi-podis. N. Polypus, G. Polypi-podis. N. Glomus, G. Glomi and Glomeris. N. Veſper, G. Veſpe-ri-ris. N. Mulciber, G. Mulcibe-ri-ris. Nouns in eus have ei and eos; as, N. Typheus, G. Typhei and Typheos. So Tydeus, Perſeus, &c. In the plural we ſay vectigaliorum & vectigalium, ſponſaliorum & ſponſalium, ſaturnaliorum & ſaturnalium, &c. So moſt names of Feaſts.

3. Some are of the ſecond and fourth; as, Laurus, G. lauri & laurus. Abl. lauro & lauru. Pl. N. laur-i-us. Ac. lauros & laurus, the reſt after the ſecond. Quercus, G. querci & quercus. Pl. G. quercorum & quercuum, the reſt after the fourth. N. Pinus, Abl. pinu. Pl. N. pinus, Ac. pin-os-us, the reſt after the ſecond. Ficus, Abl. fico & ficu. Pl. Ac. ficos & ficus, the reſt after the ſecond. Colus, G. coli & colus, Abl. colo & colu. Pl. N. col-i-us, Ac. col-os-us. the reſt of the ſecond. Cornus, G. Corn-i-us. Pl. N. cornus, Ac. cornus, the reſt of the ſecond. Domus, G. do-

G. dom-i-us, D. dom-o-ui, Abl. domo. Pl. N. domus, G. dom-orum-uum, Ac. domus, V. domus, Abl. domibus. according to the old Verse.

Tolle me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.

4. Some are of the third and fifth; as, N. Requies, G. requietis & requiei. N. Plebes, G. plebis & plebei, to which the ancient Fames, G. famis & famei, now out of use, but the Abiat. fame with ē long, yet remains.

CHAP. III.

Of Prepositions. The proper signification, various acceptions, and some Elegancies of Prepositions.

1. Governing an Accusative Case.

AD *to* or *unto*, as, Venit ad me quidam, *there came one to me.* It hath the signification of these Prepositions following. 1. Juxta and apud, *nigh to*, or *at*; as, Ad Urbem esse, *to be at the City.* Assistere ad fores, *to stand at the doors.* Ad me fuit, *he was with me.* Habes hortos ad Tiberim, *thou hast Gardens near to, close by the* Tiber. Ad Urbem esse, *to be in the Suburbs, hard by the City*, not in it. 2. Per, *by*; as, Ad breve tempus, *for a short time.* Ad fidem affirmare, *to affirm for surety.* Ad perpendiculum columnas exigere, *to try the pillars by the plumb line.* 3. Secundum, *according to*; as Ad præscriptum, *according to appointment.* Ad meum sensum, *according to my fancy.* Ad votum, *according to ones wish.* 4. Circa, *for* or *about* as, Ad præsens, *for the present.* Ad tempus, *for a while.* Ad horam, *for* or *about an hour.* Prodire ad negotia, *to go forth about business.* Ad tria millia, *about three thousand.* 5. Coram, *before*; Ad judicem dicere, *to plead before the judge.* Ad pedes, *before his feet.* Ad populum accusare, *to accuse before the people.* 6. Cum, *with*; as, Ad nullas preces, *with no intreaty.* 7. Versus, *towards*; as, Ad me respice, *look toward me.* Pronus ad meridiem locus, *a place lying toward the south*; ad occidentem,

cidentem, *toward the West.* 8. In, usque; *in, untill.* Ad inferos pœnas paricidii luent, *they shall suffer punishment for their Murther in Hell.* Ad multam noctem, *Untill it was late in the night.* Ad lucem dormire, *to sleep untill it be day.* 9. Propter, *for,* as, Ad hoc missus est, *he was sent for this purpose.* Ad umbram trepidare, *to tremble at a shadow.* Ad usum hominum omnia creantur, *all things were created for the use of men.* 10. Contra, *against*; as, Ad morsus bestiarum, *against the biting of beasts.* Also we say by way of Praise or Elegancy, Ad sapientiam hujus nugator est, *in comparison of this man's wisedom he is but a fool.* Ad dextram, *on the right hand.* Ad sinistram, *on the left hand.* Ad verbum, *word for word.* Ad unguem, *at his fingers end.* Ad pedes desilire, *to allight on foot.* Ad teli jactum pervenire, *to come within a dart's throw.* Ad solem sedere, *to sit in the sunshine.* Ad arbitrium, *at pleasure.* Ad extremum, *at length.* Ad decem annos, *after ten years*; and the like.

Adversus, adversum, have four significations. 1. Of Contra, *against*; as, Contendere adversus aliquem, *to strive against one.* 2. Of Erga, *towards*; Est enim pietas justitia adversum Deos, *for Piety is justice towards the Gods.* 3. Of Ante, *before*; as, Adversum speculum ornare se, *to dress one before the glass.* 4. Of E regione, *over against*; as, Larinum adversum Antipolin, Larinna *is over against* Antipolis.

Ante, *Before, at*; as, Ante lucem, *Before day,* Ante focum si frigus erit, *at the fire,* &c.

Apud signifyeth. 1. *At*; as, Apud me domi, *at my house.* 2. *With.* Apud se essem quotidie, *I was with him daily.* 3. *Before*; as, Apud judicem, *Before the Judge.* 4. *Among*; as, Apud Athenienses, *among* the Athenians. 5. *In*; as, Apud posteros, *In after-times.* Apud exercitum est, *he is in the Army.* So also we say, Sum apud te primus, *I am thy chief Favourite.* Apud se esse, *to be in his wits.*

Circa, circiter, circum, signifie *about, round about, near to, in*; with this difference, Circa hath respect to place and time; as, Urbes circa Capuam, *the Cities about* Capua. Circa Demetrium, *about, near to,* or *in* Demetrius's *time.* Circiter hath respect to time and number, rarely to place; as, Circiter Meridiem, *about noon.* Duo millia circiter, *about two thousand.* And Plaut. Loca hæc circiter, *about this place onely.* Circum hath properly respect to place onely; as, Circum Aquilei-

am hiemabant, *they had their Winter Quarters about* Aquileia. [But note, tha Circa may be applied both to persons and things; as, Canes suos circa se habebat, *he had his dogs about him.* Varia circa hæc opinio, &c.]

Cis, *On this side, within, before*; as, Cis Tiberim, *on this side* Tiber; Cis paucos dies, *within or before a few days.*

Citra, *On this side, without*; as, Erat cum suis navibus citra Veliam, *he was on this side* Velia *with his Ships.* Citra Senatûs populíque authoritatem, *without the Authority of the Senate and people.*

Contra signifieth, 1. *Against*; as, Contra jus fásque, *against all right.* 2. *Otherwise than*; as, Contra spem, *otherwise than was hoped.* 3. *Over against*; as, Carthago contra Italiam, Carthage *is over against* Italy. So also Contra me aspice, *look me in the Face.*

Erga, *towards*, Erga amicum, *towards my Friend*; i. e. *for his sake.*

Extra, 1. *Without*; as, Extra urbem *without the City.* 2. *Out of*; as, Extra ordinem, *out of order.* 3. *Besides*; as, Extra te unum, *beside thee alone.* Extra quam, *except that.*

Infra, *beneath*, or *under*; as, Infra lunam nihil est nisi mortale, *beneath* or *under the Moon there is nothing but what is mortal.*

Inter signifieth, 1. *Between*; as, Inter spem metúmque, *between hope and fear.* 2. *Among*; as, Inter præcipua seculi ornamenta, *among the chief ornaments of the age.* 3. *At*; as, Inter cœnam, *at supper.* Inter initia, *at the beginning.* 4. *Within*; as, Inter paucos dies, *within a few days.* So we say Inter nos ludamus, *let us play together*; and before a Gerund, Inter cœnandum, *whilst we were at supper.* Inter agendum, *while you are a doing.* All, Inter omne tempus, *during all that time.*

Intra, *Within*; as, Intra civitatem, *within the City.* Intra viginti dies, *within the space of twenty days.* So, Intra famam esse, *to be less than the report goes.*

Juxta, *Besides*, or *nigh to*; as, Juxta ossa ejus collocate ossa mea, *lay my bones beside* (or *nigh to*) *his bones.*

Ob signifieth, 1. *For*, or *by reason of*; as, Ob merita, *for their deserts.* Ob superatos hostes, *by reason of the conquered enemies.* 2. *Against*; as, Ob Romam noctu legiones ducere cœpit, *he began to march his legions against* Rome *by night.* 3. *Before*;

fare; as, Ob os effusus ignis, *five flash'd before his face.* Ob oculos mihi sæpe mors versata est, *I had oftentime death before my eyes.*

Penes. 1. *In*; as, Penes te culpa est, *the fault is in thee.* 2. *In the power of*; as, Non penes me est, *it is not in my power.* So Terence. Isthæc penes vos psaltria est, *the Minstrel is with you, in your power,* or *at your house.* Penes autorem sit fides, *for the truth of it I refer you to my Authour.*

Per signifieth. 1. *By*; as, Per dolum, *by craft.* Per vim, *by violence.* 2. *Through*; as, Per omnem urbem quærere, *to seek for one through all the City.* Per iram & levitatem *through anger and inconstancy.* 3. *Along*; as, Per compita, *along the streets.* 4. *By reason of*, or *under colour of*; as, Per ultimam necessitatem, *by reason of extreme necessity.* Per fas & fidem deceptus, *deceived under colour of Religion and ones honest word.* Likewise we say; Per me licet, *you may for all me.* Via secta per ambas, *the way divided between both.* Per id tempus, *all that while.* Per ego te deos oro, *I entreat thee for God's sake.* Per ludum & jocum, *by way of jest and mirth.* Per se, *of himself.* Spolia per otium legêre, *they gathered the Spoils at their own leisure.* Per viginti annos, *twenty years together.* Per te stetit quo minus, *it was long of you.* Per tempus advenis, *you come in right season.* And such like.

Pone, *behind*; as, Pone adem Castoris, *behind the Temple of Castor.* Plaut.

Post signifieth. 1. *After*; as, Post solis occasum, *after sun-set.* 2. *Since*; as, Post homines natos, *since the Creation.* 3. *Behind*; as, Post carecta, *behind the Sedge.*

Præter properly signifieth *over* and *beside, except*; as, Præter vecturam, *over and beside the carriage.* Præter nos nemo, *there is none except* (or *but*) *our selves.* It signifieth like other Prepositions also. 1. Juxta, or Circa; as, Præter ripam, *by the bank side.* Præter mœnia ipsa fluere, *to flow by the very walls.* 2. Supra, *above*; as, Præter cæteros excellit, *he excelleth above the rest.* 3. Ante, *before*; as, Præter oculos, *before the eyes.* 4. Contra, *otherwise*; as, Præter expectationem, *otherwise than was looked for.* Præter spem, *against hope.* 5. Sine, *without*; as, Præter modum crevit fluvius, *the river increased without measure.* Præter jocum, *without jesting.* And the like.

Prope, *nigh to, hard by*; as, Prope eum vicum Hannibal castra posuit, Hannibal *pitcht his Camp nigh to* (or *hard by*) *that Village.*

Propter, 1. *For, because of*; as, Propter se expeti, *to be desired for it self.* Propter aviditatem, *by reason of greedinesse.* 2. *By*, or *nigh to*; as, Hic propter hunc assiste, *stand here by him.* Propter aquæ rivum, *hard by the river of water.* Ignem propter assidens, *sitting by the fire.*

Secundum, *according to*; as, Secundum jus fasque, *according to right and reason.* It signifies also, 1. Juxta, vel prope, *besides*, or *nigh to*; as, Vulnus accepit secundum aurem, *he received a wound hard by his ear.* Secundum fores cubat canis, *the dog lies at the doors.* 2. Post, *next to*, or *next after*; as, Secundum Deum, *next to God.* Secundum hunc diem, *next day after this.* Secundum fratrem illis plurimum retribuebat, *he attributed most unto them next after his brother.* Otherwise we read, Secundum te litem do, *I give judgment on your side.* Secundum quietem, *in one's sleep.*

Secus, *By, near to*; as, Secus viam, *by the way side.*

Supra, *above, beyond, more than*; as, Supra spem humanam, *above humane hope.* Supra fidem, *beyond belief.* Supra tres, *more than three.*

Trans, *beyond, over, on the farther side*; as, Trans mare esse, *to be beyond the Sea.* Trans Alpes, *over the Alpes.* Cogito trans Tiberim hortos parare, *I am thinking to make a Garden on the other side of* Tiber.

Versus, *towards*; as, Londinum versus, *towards* London.

Ultra, *beyond*; as, Ultra flumen, *beyond the River.*

II. Governing an Ablative Case.

A Ab, abs, are all the same Prepositions, only a is used before Consonants, Ab before Vowels, and sometimes before l, r, j, and s, Abs before t, c, q, as, Abs quivis homine; and sometimes r; as, Abs re, their proper signification is *from*; as, A puero, *from a boy.* Ab initio, *from the beginning*; but they are often used in the sense of these Prepositions following. 1. Post, *after*; as, A prandio, *after dinner.* Ab undecima hora, *after eleven a clock.* 2. Cum, *with*; A potu quidam prandium incipiunt, *some begin dinner with drink.* A me sentit, *he thinks with me*; i.e. *he is*

is of my opinion. 3. De, *of*; as, A me dabo, *I will give of my own.* A cæteris silentium, *of other things silence.* 4. Contra, *against*; as, Defendere à frigore, *to defend against the cold.* 5. Versus, *towards, on*; as, A læva, *toward the left hand.* A dextra, *on the right hand.* 6. Propter, *for*; as, A metu infamiæ, *for fear of Infamy.* A verecundia, *for shame.* It sometime signifieth *since, against, at, on, by, through*; as, Ab aurora, *since the morning.* Ab illo tempore, *ever since that time.* Abs re, *against convenience.* Ab ingenio improbus, *by disposition wicked.* Ab equitatu firmissimus, *strong at riding.* Ab ostio omnia istæc audivi, *I heard all this at door.* Ab occidente, *on the West.* Ab Romanis, *on the Romans side.* Ab ira & odio, *through anger and hatred.* So also, Ab integro, *afresh.* Ab illo tibi solvam, *I will take it of him and pay you.* Ab infantibus clementissimus, *most mercifull towards Infants.* Secundus à rege, *next unto the King.* A moribus, à viribus, à fortuna probare milites, *to prove Souldiers according to* (or *in respect of*) *their manners, strength, and fortune.* Doleo ab oculis, *it grieves me to see it.* Ab illo, *in respect of him.* A summo plenus, *full to the top.* Abs te stat, *it stands you upon.* A me salutem dic, *remember me to him.* A sole calor, *the heat of the Sun.* A me fores, *my doors*, &c. Also after a Dative Case it implies places and offices of Trust; as. Principi à secretioribus consiliis, *a privy Counsellour.* A pugione, *a Sword-bearer.* A libellis, *a master of Requests.* A memoria, *a remembrancer.* So Alicui à poculis, *a cup-bearer.* A rationibus, *an auditor.* A manibus, *a clerk:* But in these and the like is understood the word Servus, or Minister; as, Est illi à manu servus, *he is his clerk.* Est mihi servus à pedibus, *he is my Page*, or *Lacquay*; and so in the rest.

Absque, *without, but for*; as, Absque injuria, *without injury.* (Stephan.) Absque te esset, *but for thee it had been*, &c.

Coram, *before, in presence of, face to face*; as, Coram illis *before them*, or *in their presence.*

Cum, *with*; as, Cum ferro, *with a sword.* Cum labore scribere, *to write with pain.* It this is vartously used by way of Phrase; as, Cum dicto, *assoon as he had spoken*, Recordari cum animo, *to remember in his mind.* Abi cum pace, *go in peace.* Dum esses cum imperio, *while you were in Authority.* Cum diluculò abiit, *he departed at day breaking*; And such like,

De, properly *of*, or *concerning*; as, De virtute, *of virtue.* De vitio, *concerning vice.* But it hath also the force of divers other Prepositions, and begets elegant Phrases. 1. Of ex and A, as, De medio, *out of the middle.* De industria, *for the nonce.* De principio, *from the beginning.* 2. Of Propter; as, Varie de causis, *for divers reasons.* De nihilo irasci, *to be angry for nothing.* 3. Of Post; as, De prandio ad te veniam, *after Dinner I will come to you.* So we read, De more, *after the manner.* De nocte, *by night.* De tempore cœnavit, *he supped in good time.* De nostro edunt, *they live at our charge.* De genu pugnare, *to fight on his knees.* De integro, *anew, afresh.* De cætero, *henceforward.* De improviso, *on a sudden.* De transverso, *athwart.* Gravi de causa, *upon a weighty consideration.* De scripto dicere, *to read his Sermon.*

E, Ex, *of*, *out of*; as, Audivi ex nuncio, *I heard it of the messenger.* Ex urbe redit, *he returns out of the City.* But is also used variously not without great elegancy; as, Ex animi sententia, *according to ones mind.* Ex arte dicere, *to speak according to art.* Ex præcepto, *according to command*; Ex alto repetere aliquid, *to repeat a thing from the beginning.* Ex natura avidus, *by nature covetous.* Ex professo, *without dissimulation.* Ex illo tempore, *after that time*, or *since that time.* E re nata, *according to the present occasion.* E regione, *over against.* Ex integro, *afresh.* E facili, *easily.* E longinquo, *afar off.* E republica, *for the profit of the Commonwealth.* E vestigio, *out of hand.* E renibus laborare, *to be ill in the reins.* With many more of like sort.

Præ signifieth *before*, or *in comparison of*; as, Præ nobis beatus, *happy in comparison of us.* Præ se omnes alios contemnit, *he despiseth all in comparison of himself.* It is used also so, 1. Propter, *for*, or *because of*; as, Præ lachrymis loqui nequit, *he cannot speak for weeping.* Præ ira, *for* (or *by reason of*) *anger.* 2. Ante, *before*, *at*; as, Præ foribus expectat, *he tarrieth at the door.* Præ se armentum agens, *driving an herd of beasts before him.* Præ oculis, *before our eyes.* Præ manu dare pecuniam, *to pay money before hand.* Præ se ferre, *to pretend*, or *make shew as if*, *to make shew of.*

Palam *before*, or *in sight of*; as, Palam populo, *before all the people*, or *in their sight.*

Pro

Pro properly signifieth *for*; as. Pro veritate pœnis affici, *to be punished for the truth.* Pro patria mori, *to die for his country.* Four hath the signification of several other Prepositions; viz. 1. Secundum, *according to*; as. Pro meis viribus, *according to my strength.* Pro more *according to his fashion.* Pro meritis, *according to his deserts.* 2. In, *in*; as, Pro tribunali sedet, *he sits in the tribunal.* Pro suggestu loquitur, *he speaks in the Pulpit.* Excubare pro templis, *to watch in the Temples.* 3. Ante, *before*; as, Pro curia, *before the Court.* Pro foribus, *before the doors.* It is used often for Loco, *instead of*; as. Pro uxore habere, *to use instead of a Wife.* Pro aliquo mori, *to die instead, or in place of any one.* Ego pro te molam, *I will grind in thy stead.* Also we read these Phrases; Pro mea parte adjuvi, *I helped as much as in me lay.* Pro se quisque, *every man for his own part.* Pro meo jure dico, *I tell you freely.* Pro aliquo stare, *to defend one.* Pro tempore & loco, *according to time and place.* Pro nihilo ducere, *to set naught by.* Pro certo habere, *to affirm for a certain.* Pro comperto habere *to know for a surety.* Pro eo ac debui graviter molestéque tuli, *I took it grievously as my part and duty was.*

Sine, *without*; as. Sine dubio, *without doubt.*

Tenus, *up to*; as, Aurium tenus, *up to the ears.* Umbilico tenus, *up to the Navel.* Verbo tenus, & ore tenus, *in words onely.*

III. Governing both an Accusative and an Ablative Case.

CLam, *privily, unknown to*; as. Clam vos sunt facinora ejus, *his pranks are unknown to you.* Clam iis eam vidi, *I saw her unknown to them.*

In, with an Accusative, signifies properly *into*; as. In urbem, *into the City.* Yet hath it the force of divers other Prepositions; as. 1. Inter, *among*; as, In vulgus, *among the common people.* 2. Ad, *to*; as. Facere verba in aliquam partem, *to speak to any purpose.* In tuam perniciem, *to thy ruine* In hunc diem, *even to this day.* Effusi in epulas & luxum, *given wholly to riot and banqueting.* 3. Usque ad, *untill*; In diem proximum, *untill the next day.* In serum, *untill it was late.* Studebat in tempus cœnæ, *he studied till supper time.* 4. Propter, *for*; as, Non veni in hoc, *I came not for that matter.* 5. Pro, *for*; as, In singulos milites, *for every souldier.* In

ſingulas cœnas, *for every ſupper.* In rem noſtram, *for our good.* 6. Contra, adverſus, *againſt*; as, Lata lex eſt in adulterum, *there is a Law made againſt the Adulterer.* Dicere in aliquem, *to plead againſt any one.* Alſo we ſay, In horas, *every hour.* In viros, *man by man.* In diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth.* In pedes naſci, *to be born with the feet forwards.* Sometimes in with its caſe is render'd adverbially; as, In immenſum, *vaſtly.* In obliquum, *a croſs*, or *a ſidelong.* In orbem, *around.* In poſterum, *henceforward.* In incertum, *at a venture.* In tantum, *ſo far forth.* In totum, *wholly.* In unguem, *exactly.*

In, with an Ablative Caſe ſignifieth, 1. *In*; as, In ignibus, *in the fires.* 2. *At*; as, In morte, *at his death.* In ipſo mortis articulo, *at the very point of death.* 3. *Within*; as, In triduo, *within three days.* Alſo we read, In ingreſſu, *while I enter.* In propinquo, *hard by.* In publico, *abroad.* In re præſenti, *upon the place.*

Sub, with an Accuſative Caſe ſignifieth *about, towards, at the point of*; as, Sub idem tempus, *about that time.* Sub lucis ortum, *about break of day.* Sub noctem, *towards night.* Sub adventum, *at the point of his coming.* Sub horam cœnæ, *a little before ſupper.* Sometimes *next after*; as, Sub eas literas, *Next after theſe Letters.*

Sub, with an Ablative Caſe, *In, under, upon, a little before*; as, Sub nocte ſilenti, *in the dead of the night.* Sub frigido ſudore mori, *to die in a cold ſweat.* Sub Alexandro, *under* Alexander, or *in* Alexander's *time.* Meruit ſub rege, *he ſerved under the King.* Sub conditione, *upon condition.* Sub manu, *ready at hand.* Sub exitu vitæ, *a little before he died.*

Subter, *under*; as, Subter terram, *under the earth.* Subter aquas, *under the water.*

Super, with an Accuſative, ſignifieth, 1. As Supra, *above*; Super octingentos annos, *above eight hundred years.* Super mille, *above a thouſand.* Super cœnam, *at ſupper.* 2. As Poſt, or Ultra, *after* or *beyond.* Noctem ſuper mediam vigilavi, *I watched till after midnight.* Is diem ſuper medium dormire ſolet, *he uſed to ſleep till it be paſt noon day.* 3. *When*, or *while that*; as, Super vinum, & epulas, *when* (or *while*) *they were drinking and banqueting.* Super ſomnum ſervus, *a Chamberlain.*

Super

Super, with an Ablative ſignifies, 1. As De, *of*. Doce me ſuper hac re, *Inform me about*, or *concerning that matter*. Super hac re multa dixit, *he ſpake much about this thing*. 2. As In, *upon*. Super viridi fronde, *upon a green leaf*. Super gramine viridi, *upon the green graſs*.

CHAP. IV.

Of Points, Notes, and Accents neceſſary for directing the Voice and Pronunciation; and proportioning Sentences, in reſpect of their dependence, or government in Conſtruction.

I. A Comma is a Note of breathing in a Sentence, marked at the foot of a word, (,) and is uſed at the end of every Grammatical Sentence, where the ſenſe is not perfected; and after every word, whether Noun, Verb, or Adjective, which (being ſupplied) would make ſuch a Sentence; as, Nihil te nocturnum præſidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil horum ora, vultúſque moverunt. Plenos omni iniquitate, malitia, dolo, ſcortatione, avaritiâ, contentione, &c. Seriùs, ocyùs, neceſſe cunctis eſt mori. It is uſed alſo when a Word, or Sentence, by reaſon of a Relative or Conjunction, is put in the middle of another Sentence; as, Ipſe qui nummos admiratur, miſer eſt. Ego, cum accerſas, ad te veniam cito. And in Verſe when words are tranſplaced by Hyperbaton. It is likewiſe ſometimes uſed to avoid an ambiguity or confuſion; as, Summa quidem auctoritate Philoſophi, ſeverè, ſanè atque honeſtè, hæc tria genera confuſa, cogitatione diſtinguunt. Where the Comma after confuſa, is ſet to avoid its being confounded with cogitatione.

II. A Semicolon is a note of breathing ſomewhat longer, and poſſeſſeth half the ſpace between a Comma and a Colon, thus marked, (;) and it is uſed, 1. In contrarieties; as, Non in vita; ſed in morte: *not in life; but in*

in death. 2. In disjunctive Sentences; as, Aliud clausum pectore; aliud promptum in lingua habere. Aut dies est; aut nox. *The one defends us against the stroke of the Law; the other against the mutability of Fortune.*

III. A Colon is a note of suspending the voice for a little time; it is thus marked (:) and noteth a perfect part of a Sentence, the whole sense being not yet finished; as, Ut agri non omnes fragiferi sunt, qui coluntur: Sic animi non omnes culti, fructum ferunt. *God rules in the Heavens: So Kings rule on the Earth.*

IV. A Period is a full distinction and note of longest pearking, which after a perfect Sentence is thus noted (.) It is used always when the sense is compleated, whether in one or many Clauses.

V. A Parenthesis ( ) used when a Sentence is put within another, which yet may be left out, and the sense not destroyed; as,

Parve (nec invideo) sine me liber, ibis in urbem.

VI. A Note of Interrogation (?) used when a question is asked; as, Cujum pecus? an Meliboei?

VII. A Subunio, or Hyphen, (-) used. 1. When two whole words are united; as, *Pale-faced.* 2. When one part of the word is writ at the end of the line, and the other at the beginning of the next.

VIII. A note of Exclamation, (!) used when we express any thing with wonder; as, Heu pietas! heu prisca fides! proh vana voluptas!

IX. A Dialysis, (¨) used when a diphthong is parted into two Syllables; as, Pictäi, aquäi, poëma, and sometimes when one Syllable is made two, as, evolüisse for evolvisse.

X. An Induction, (ʌ) used to bring in a word interlined.

XI. An

XI. An Apoſtrophus (') uſed when a letter is caſt out; as, dix'tin' for dixiſtine, vin' for viſne.

XII. A note of Quotation (") uſed in the Margin, when we quote a Sentence out of an Authour.

XIII. An Acute tone (') uſed to diſtinguiſh doubtfull quantities; as, cécidit, cecidit.

XIV. A Grave tone (`) uſed to diſtinguiſh Adverbs from other words; as, ſtultè, unà, ſeriò, palàm.

XV. A Circumflex tone (^) uſed, 1. Over Ablatives in a, and Genitive Cases in us; as, Musâ, Manûs, Sapphûs. 2. Over Syllables long by nature; as, amavêre, fuêre, legêre, [in the Fut. Perf.] 3. Over words Syncopated and contracted; as, amâſti, tibîcen, alîus [the Genitive for alius.] Alſo over ergô when it is taken for causâ.

XVI. Notes of time (-⏑) the former ſet above a ſyllable ſhews it long; as, aūdāx; the latter ſet above a ſyllable ſhews it ſhort; as, mŏdŭs.

There are found divers others, as, Aſterisks (*) Hands (☞) Obelisks (†) and ſuch like: But theſe not having any uſe in conſtruction, or Pronunciation, and depending wholly upon the pleaſure of thoſe that uſe them, are not a fit ſubject to be here farther inſiſted upon.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Regulæ generales cognoſcendi quantitatem Syllabarum ancipitum, quæ præcedentibus Proſodiæ canonibus cognoſci nequeat; unà cum Indice Poetico eandem in compendio exhibente.

SUbſtantiva in *al*, *le*, *do*, & *go*; item Adverbia in (*tim*) deſinentia, vocalem in penultima producunt; ut, *Tribūnal*, *vectīgal*, *cubīle*, *alcēdo*, *imāgo*, *diētim*, *virītim*.

Excipiuntur *Animal*, *capital*, *Tōral*, *Hannibal*, *Aſdrŭbal*, *Insile*, *Nephēle*, *Hecăle*, *Herophile*, *Idăle*, *Semēle*, *comēdo*, *unēdo*, *Macēdo*, *lēgo*, *harpăgo*, & *perpētim*, in quibus penultima corripitur; *ſpado* & *ſtatim*, in quibus anceps reperitur.

I ante V producitur; ut, *dīves*, *rīvus*, &c.

Excipiuntur *nĭvis* à *nix*, *redivĭvus*, *bĭvium*, *trĭvium*, *trĭvia* brevia; *Ninive* & *ubivis* communia.

Si prior pars compoſitionis deſinat in *a*, vel *o*, producitur; ut, *contrādico*, *trādo*, *trāno*, *intrōduco*, *retrōverſus*.

Excipiuntur brevia, *hŏdie*, *quandŏquidem*, *ŏmitto*, *ŏperio*, *ſacrŏſanctus*, & Græca, ubi O micron eſt; ut, *Bibliŏpola*.

Cum prior pars Compoſitionis deſinat in quavis aliâ vocali, corripitur; ut, *Nĕfandus*, *bĭpes*, *quadrŭpes*, *polĭdorus*.

Exceptiones.

E tamen producunt: *Trēvir*, *venēficus*, *videlicet*; *Nēquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēdum*, *nēfas*, *nēquaquam*, *nēquicquam*, *liquēfacio*, *calēfacio*, *benēfacio*, &c.

I Producitur in *ibīdem*, *ubīque*, *utrobīque*, *ubīlibet*, &c. item in compoſitis ex *Dies*, *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *poſtrīdie*, &c. Sed in *quotidie*, *quotidianis*, *ubivis*, *ubicunque*, *meliphyllum*, *i* communis reperitur.

IN-

INDEX POETICUS.

Vocales quarum quantitas hiſce Regulis aut Proſodiâ non ſatis conſtat, pro brevibus habentur; praeter eas quæ in ſequenti tabula exhibentur.

A *Producitur in ſequentibus.*

ante B.

Abel, c.
abrotanum
Atabalus
Derivativis in abilis, abundus, abulum, abrum, abra
crabro
Dolabella
fabula
fabulor
flabrum
flabellum, c.
labor, *verbum.*
labilis
labes
labrum
labruſca
Nabis, *vir.*
Nabus, *flu.*
pabulum
Sabura, *vir.*
ſabis
ſabus
tabes
tabum
tabeſco
Tabis
Thabor
Zabulun, c.

ante C.

Acacia
Achan
Acys, c.
Anchaces
Derivativis in acus, acior, acius, aceus, aculus, acundus
acer, *Adj.*
acris
aclides
Acriſionæus
Acron
Acriſius
benacus
brachium, c.
bracara
cacabo
cacabus
cacus, c.
cameracum
cochlacæ
cloaca
daci
dacia
facundus
flacilla
glacilla
graculus
hippaco-as
Jacob, c.
lachanius
maceries
machina
Malacha, c.
naca
nonacrine
olacilius
opacus
paco-as

placo

placo
paſtinaca
portulaca
piſtachium
phæaca
pacuvius
ſimulacrum
ſarracum
ſyracuſa
thracia
trachyna
vacinium
Zachæus
Zacharias

ante D.

Adam, c.
Adraſus
agiladas
bagrada
caduceus
caduceum
caducifer
Caduſus, c.
clades
cicada
conradus
gades
gadir
gaditanus
Gradivus, c.
jader
jadera
jada
ladas
Ladon
menradas
quadi
quadrans
quadratus
quadriga
quadras
quadruplex
quadragenus
quadrupes
radix
rado
ſpadix
ſuadeo
ſuade
ſuadela
ſaducæus
tradux
vado

ante F.

afer
Africa
venafrum
venafranus

ante G.

Agar
agaricum
agea
agis
ambages
Agrippina

Derivat. in.
ago
ages
agulum
aginta
aginus

contagium
faginus
fagus
flagitium

in his a flagito
ante d fragum
eſt com. hippago
munis, lagon
freque- lagopus
tius lagus
longa. magalia
meleager
pagus
pagina
plaga, *verber.*
Paganus
ſaga
ſagum
ſagio
ſtrages
ſtragulum
ſtragulo
tragula
tragema
vagina
vagio
Vagor, *nom.*

ante L.

Abeſſalon
ala
alea
alifer
Alecto
Aledius

In derivativis in alis, *ut*, æqualis. *Præter Patronymica*, Pardalis, Tantalis.

ales
Aliphe
alutamen
aqualicolus
Aſcalion

Are-

Aretalogus
balo
balatus
balæna
baliſta
balanotus
Calatia
Caliſtho
caligo, *nom. & verb.*
calo
canalis
carnaliter
Cephalene
Coralion, c.
halo
halec
halitus
Jalyſos
Laletania
mala } *Subſt.*
malum } *Subſt.*
malus } *Subſt.*
malius, *adj. propr.*
Malus, *urbs.*
malo, *verb.*
malabathrum
magalia
mapalia
Meſſala
Omphale
pala
palo
palus-li
palanteum
Palas
Pharſalia, c.
palatum
palatium
Palatinus
qualis
qualus
ſandalium
ſodalis
ſqualeo
ſqualus
ſcala
Sardanapalus
ſalentinum
Stymphalus
Stymphalides
talea
talis
talio
talus
talaris
Thales, c.

ante M.

amen, c.
amens
amentum
Deriv. *in* { amen / amentum
ames-itis
Amianus
Apamia
armamentarium
Bamurra
Cama
camus
chamæciſtus
clamo
contamino
dama
Damon
Damœtas
Damo
fama
foramen
gramen
hamus
hamatus
lama
lamia
lamina
lamentor
mamers
mamurrus
mamercus
Philamon
ramus
ramex
ramalia
ſquama
ſquameæ
Samaritanus, c.
Samarita, c.
Thamus
trama
trames
thymiama

ante N.

Alanus
Alcanor
ana, *flu.*
in Adjectivis in { anis / anus / aneus / anius
anachorita
anellus
anippe
anus, *pars corporis.*
anulus
anormis
aranea
Bacchanalia
Bolanus
Canidia
caneo

canities

canities
caneſco
canus
cranus
Danubius
Euphranor
fanum
fanaticus
granum
ganea
garganus
ganeo
glanianus
janus
Janus
janalis
immanitas
lana
lanities
lanugo
Lanuvium
lupanar
Lucanus
mano
manes, *pl.*
mane
manilius
mani
nanus
nicanor
Numanus
panis
panariolum
planus
pelicanus, c.
Phanaticus
plane
planities
profano
rana
Sano-as

ſane
ſanus
Sampſanus
Sicani, c.
Theano
Tigranes
vanus
vaneſco
vomanus

ante P.

Æſculapius
anapus
apamia
apenninus
apidanus
apis
apulia
crapo
crapula
japix
japis
japedites
japidia
japium
japiges, *pop.*
meſſapus
napus
Neapolis
papa
papas
papia
paphlagon
papilio
papilus
papinius
proſapia
rapum
ſaperda
ſapis, *fl.*

ſapo
ſcapus
ſinapis
ſeraphim
ſerapis
Taprobane
vapulo

ante Q.

Aquila, *vir.*

ante R.

amarus
Amaracus
ancillariolus
angario-as
ara
Arabia
area
areo
aridus
aretinus
aretus
aria
aruns
arula
Aaron, c.
Finitis in { arius / aria / arium
niſi ſint à brevibus, ut, Părius.
Finitis in { aris / are
Præter Mare, bimaris, hilaris, abaris, araris, fabaris, phalaris, ſybaris. avarus

avari-

avaricus
baleares
baris
baro
barus
Calvaria
Caphareus
carex
caris, *piſc.*
carus, *Adj.*
Carus, *vir.*
Caria
Carinas
cares
carectum
chariſmata
charitas
cinara
clarus, *Adj.*
clarus, *fons.*
claranus
clareo
Darius
Euariſtus
glarea
gnarus
ignarus
inclareo
larus
Lariſſa
Larunda
larius
Larina
longarenus
marubium
Maruſia
Narycia
pareo
phalarica
parus
Pharao, c.
Phariſæus, c.
quare
rarus
Sara
Scarus
ſquaroſus
Taraco
thare
tiara
varus
Varus
varicus

ante S.

agaſo
Amaſis
Amaſia, *urbs.*
Aſia, *lacus.*
Aſis
Aſiacus
Aſo
Aſopus
baſio-as
baſis
baſium
caſeus
caſellius
caſurus
Colocaſia
convaſo
Jaſon
laſerpitium
Mnaſylus
naſus
Naſon
Naſo
naſica
naſium
omaſum
Paſchaſius
Paſiphae
Paſiphilus
Paſithea
Phaſis, c.
Thraſimache
Vaſidius

ante T.

Arquatus
Atalanta
ate
atella
atina
In Derivatis & propriis deſinentibus
in ates, athes, atim, atus, atius, aticus, ator, atrix, atrum
Præter Lapăthes, Pelăthes, Zelăthes.
ater, a, um.
atrium
atramentum
Atrebates
atriplex
atronius
atropateni
Atropos
Atys, c.
batale
blatero
calatia
capraria
cathis

catholicus
catillus
cicatrix
clathrum
Cleopatra
collatinus
cratis
crater
craticula
crathis
craton
fatum
frater
gnatho
gnatia
gnatus
grabatus
gratia
grates
grator
gratus
laterno
lato-as
latus, *Adj.*
Latona
latois
latro-as
lathyris
lupatum
mater
materia
maturus
matutinus
matula
Matrona, *fl.*
Nathaniel
natio
natus
natalis
natura
palatum
palatium
pirata
pratum
quatenus
quatuor
Saturnus
ſcatinia
ſenator
ſtlata
talatus
ſtratum
Statius
vates
Vaticanus
vaticinus
vaticinor
veratrum

ante V.

Agave
batavus
cadaver
clavus
clavis
clava
conclave
Davus
David, c.
flavus
flaveſco
flavius
gaviſus
gnavus
ignavus
Lavinium, c.
mavors
mavis
navis
navalis
navigo
navita
naviter
octavus
pavo
pavus
pravus
ravis
ſuavis

E producitur in ſequentibus.

ante B.

creber
debeo
debilis
debilito
Debora
ebeſita
ebrius
ephebus
Der. in ebilis
febris
gleba
hebe
hebion
Hebrus
Nebrides
plebes
palpebræ
rhebas
rhebus
ſebetos
ſebethus
theba
trebula
vebius
Zebedeus

ante

ante C.

Bechyri
echo
echinus, *pisc.*
Der. in ecula
fecundus
imbecillis
lecantia
lecythus
Mecœnas
mechanicus
secius
securus
seculum
Tecolithus
theca
vecors
vecordia
verecundus

ante D.

äedon
acedia
aledius
acredula
anthedon
caledonius, *scot.*
cedo-is
Chalcedon
credo
credulus
cotyledon
cupedia
Diomedes
dromeda
Edom
Edonis, c.
edonus
eumedes
ficedula
hedylus
heduus
hedymeles
leda
ledus, *fl.*
medica, *herb.*
Medus
Medea
Media, *regio.*
monedula
Finitis in { medes, â, μῆδος.
Nedymnus
pedo-is
pedor, *subst.*
rheda
sedo-as
seditio
sedes
sedulus
sedecies
sarpedon
teda
veredus

ante G.

cethegus
collega
collegium
egates
egeria
Gregorius
lego-as
legitimus
megareus
pega
pegasus
phegeus
phlegyas
privilegium
regia
regina
Rhegium
regulus
regula
segor
flege
Symplegas
tegula

ante L.

Anhelus
Belial
belus
camelus
Carmelus
candela
celo-as
chelæ
contumelia
delubrum
deliciæ
delius
delus
Delos, *insula.*
Electrum
Electra
Elei
Eleides
Elias
Elis
Elisa
Elisabetha
elogium
Elysium
eluvies

Derivatis in { ela / elis
Eumelis
eumelus
famelicus
felis
felix
geli
helis
Helias
heleus
helius
heliades
helianus
Heliodorus
heluo
heluor
indelibilis
lelaps
mela
melis
Melchus
melo, *fluv.*
neleus
Pelagianus
Pelamides
Peleus
pelignus
Pelion
Peluſium
phaſelus
prelum
reliquiæ
ſpelium
ſpelunca
tela
telum
teleboæ, *gens.*
telecoon
Telegonus
Telemachus
Telemus
velamen
velabrum
veles
velivolus
velo-as
velox
velum
zelus
zelo

ante M.

abſtemius
Academia
Andremon
aremoricus
Bethlemicus
Bohemia
cementum
Chremes
Clemens
demo
demum
Græcanicis in ema
Compoſita ab { ἥμω / ἡμέρα / δήμιος / φήμη
Emanuel
Emathia
eminus
eremus
extremus
femina
hemina
Hemitritæus
Hemus
incrementum
mnemoſyne
nemo
remus
racemus
Rhemus
Remigius
remigo
remigium
remex
ſemen
ſemino
ſemita
ſemis
ſemeſus, *& reliquis compoſitis cum ſemi.*
ſubtemen
temetum
temo
Temolus
temulentus
vindemia

ante N.

agenor
agarenus
ahenum
aloenor
alcmene
anienis
antenor
athenæ
Benacus
Celeneus
ceneius
Cenines, *gens.*
Cebrenus
Cephenes
crena
Cyrene
denarius
denique
denuo

denus

denus
Dindymene
Derivat. & appellat. in { enus, ena, enum.
[*Et propriis frequentius.*]
elpenor
Enoch
Enos
Geneſa
Hippocrene
lena, *veſtis.*
Lenæus
lenimen
lenio
lenius
lenis
leno
mena
menius
menogenes
meninx
Mitylene
pene
Penelope
penius
penicillus
peniculamentum
penis
penula
penuria
Peninſula
plenus
Rhenus
ſena, *urbs.*
Scyene
Scena
ſenio
ſenus
Silenus, *pr.*
ſplenium
ſerenus
ſtrena
ſtrenius
ſtrenuus
tenos
threnos
Thraſumenus
vena
veneo
venalis
venundo
venor
venator
venabulum
venucula
zeno
zenon

ante P.

Æſephus
Aſclepius
cepe
cepio
Cephiſus
Cephenes
Cepheus
Depygis
Epyrus
Epyrota
Epytus
Gepida, *gens.*
hepar
Joſephus
lepidium
Leponticus
præſepe
repo
ſepia
ſepes
Seplaſia
Tlepolemus
Vepicus
veprecula

ante Q.

Sequana

ante R.

Abdera
Abderitanus
berillus
Berytus
cera
Ceratus, *fl.*
cereus
cerete
Cerinthus
cerinthe
cerites
ceritus, *Adj.*
ceroma
ceromaticus
ceruſſa
Cheremon
Cherilus
clerus
cratera
Cyperus
Cythera
dicterium
erem
eretinus
eretum
Adject. in erus
Græcis in { teria, terium
Eridanus
Erigone

Erii, *montes.*
Erinne
eruca
feriæ
feralis
Feronia
galerus
Geryon
Geraſcenus
Heraclea
herea
Hereos
Herodes
Herodotus
heros
heroina
hiera
Hieruſalem
Homerus
Hieronymus
Jeremias
incero
mera
meriones
nerea
Nereus
neris
periene
nerina
neritos
pera
Perithous
pero
peronatus
poderis
plerique
Seranus
ſeres
ſeria, *Subſt.*
ſerlacum
ſericum
ſerius, *Adj.*
ſerus, *Adj.*
ſpero
ſtatera
tereus
Theramenes
Theridamas
Theron
trieres
trieteris
theriaca
veratrum
verax
veredus
verus
Verona
Xerampelinus
Zerinthus

ante Ş.

Ambeſus
Arceſius
Aleſius
Beſa
bleſus
charcheſium
Cteſiphon
Diœceſis
Eccleſia
Numeral. in eſimus
Græcis verbalibus in eſis *à futuris in* ήσω ut, matheſis, *& in omnibus à* νῶ *&* σῶ, ut, Lyrneſus, Moneſus, &c.
eſuriq
eſula
eſus
Eteſias
Galeſus
geſium
haleſus
herbeſus
Heſiodus
Heſione
Jeſus
Magaleſia
Magneſia
Meſapus
Mileſius
Myndeſus
Neſis
obeſus
Oneſimus
Peloponneſus
pereſus
reſina
Rheſus
tarteſus
tarteſiacus
theſaurus
Theſeus
timeſius
titareſus
veſanus
veſi, *gens.*
veſica
Veſuvius

ante T.

acetum
admetus
Æeta
anethum
aretinus
argilletum
auletes
beta

betus
betula
Bethania
betis
betonica
boletus
Cæretis
Ceretanus
cetaria
cete
cetoſus
Cetecharus
cajeta
creta
cretoſus
Creta, *inſul.*
Cretheus
curetes

Derivatis in
- eta
- etes
- eticus
- etum
- etus

fetus, *adj.*
fetura
getulia
lethe
lethum
lethalis
letho-as
Lethæus
letharg;cus
libethrum
Lucretius
meta
metior
moneta
netum
petum
Pelethronium
Philetas
Prometheus
rete
reto-as
rheteus
rhetia
rhetor
ſeta
ſetabis
ſetia
ſpeletinus
Taygete
Taygetus
theta
temetum
teter
Tethis
vegetus
vietus, c.
vetonica
zelus
zethes

ante V.

ceveo
Eva
Evander
evangelium
Evenus, *fl.*
Levi
Levita
Levina
levis
levor
levatus
ſevum
Treviri, *gens.*
Suevus

I & Y *producuntur in ſequentibus.*

ante B.

clibanus
fibula
hyble
Hibernus
Hyberne
Hybrida
Libanus
Ibycus
liber, *adj.*
liber
liberalis
liberi, *pl.*
libero-as
libethrus
libo
libra
libum
Orbaſus
ſcriba
ſcribo
Scribonius
fibilus
fibulo-as
tibia
Tibur
tibicen
tibicina
tiburnus
vibex
vibia
Vibius
vibo
viburnum

ante C.

Æquicolus
amicus
anicetus
apicius
apricus
anticus
aricia
alaricus
Berenice
caprificus
cervical
cichoreum
dica
dico-is
Doryclus
Empericus
erica
extrico
febricito
febricosus
ficus
ficedula
ficosus
ficulnus
ficetum
formica
ico
icon
Inimicus
Icarus
Iconium
Diminutivis. iculus, icula, iculum
Barbaris omnibus in icus, ut Henricus, Ludovicus.
labici
labicum
lectica
licium
licæus
licianus
lichen
Lycæum
lorica
lumbricus
marica
matricida
Mauricius
mica
mendicus
multicium
myrica
Nasica
Nicea
Nicer
niceteria
nutrico
pediculus
periculum
peticus
petricosus
pica
piceus
picenum
picumnus
picus, *avis.*
Picus, *rex.*
Polynices
posticus
postica
pudicus
phycus-untis
rubrica
saticuli
sica
sicarius
sicanus
sichus
sicelis
sicilia
sicubi
sicut
spica
somniculosus
Thessalonica
Ticinus, *fl.*
trica
tricenus
tricessimus
trico-onis
Trivicus
Vaticanus
vesica
vicus
vicinus
Vicentia
vicies
vicenus
vicessimus
umbelicus
urtica

ante D.

Abydeni
Abydos
acidalia
aspidia
Asidena
chelidon
chelidonia
considero
clepsydra
Cydippe
Davides
desidero
Dido
Euclides

Euri-

Euripides
faſtidio
Fidenæ
Fidentia
fidus
fiducia
gnidus
Hydra
Ida
Idalus
idea
idem, *maſc.*
idolum
Idomeneus
Idothees
Verbs in ido
Præter divido *& compoſit.* à cado, *ut* incido.
Patronymic. in ides *à nominibus in* eus *vel* es, *ut*, Pelides, *&c.*
idus
Iſidius
Lidia
Lydia
Lydus
nideo
nidor
nidus
Phidias
Piſidia
Poſidonia
pridem
rideo
ſido
ſidus *vel* ſydus
Sidon. *urbs.*
Strideo
ſtridor
ſtridulus
triduum
Tydeus
Thucidides

ante G.

auriga
biga
caſtigo
corrigia
Digentia, *fl.*
faſtigium
fatigo
figo
fligo
frigo
frigus
frigeo
frigidus
frigilla
Gyges
Gygæus
Igilium
inſtigo
origanum
pyga
Pygargus
quadriga
Sigæum
ſigerius
ſalpiga
ſtrigilis
ſtrigaſus
triga
triginta
trigeſimus
veſtigo
viginti
vigeſimus
vigeſis

ante L.

Abyla
acilius
ancilenus
Aprilis
Argiletum
aſylum
Aſylas
bilis
chilon
chylus
conchylium
conchyle
condyloma
Crocodilus
dilato
diligens
diligenter
Eriphyle
Evilat, *fl.*
fenilia
filius
filia
filum
filatim
gilo
hilum
hylus
Igilius
ilia
Adject. in ilis *præter verbalia.*
Subſ. in ile.
ilex
iliceus
ilicetum
ilicet
Ileus, *diſſyl.*
Ilus

Ilium
Ilia
Ilia
Iliacus
Iliades
Ilias
Ilignus
Ilione
Ilioneus
Ilifſus
Ilithya
Incilo-as
Iilium
Lucilius
Manilius
Marſilius
Maſſylia
miles
milito
miletus
mileſius
milichius
milonius
Nilotis
Nilus
Oileus
Palilia
Pamphilia
Petilia
Philoſophus
Phileſius
Philyrides
Phileus
pila, *columna.*
Pilatus, c.
pilanus
pileus
pilo-as
pilentum
Pilumnus
pilum
pipilo
pilæ
pſilothrum
Rutilius
ſcilicet
Servilius
Silenus, c.
Silius
Silo
ſiloa
ſmilax
ſyla
ſylo
Venilia
villis

ante M.

Adimantus
Alimenus
Amymone
Ariminum
bimus
bimulus
Brimo
clima
climax
Chimerii
cimex
crimen
cyma
Cymodoce
Cymothoe
cymoſus
Drymo
Enthymema
Himera
Hymen, *c.*
imus, *adj.*
Joachimus

Subſt. {imen / *in* imentum
à verbis quartæ conjugationis.
limus, *Adj.* vel *lutum.*
lima
limax
limen
limes
limito
limo-as
Limon
limoſus
Mimalion
mimus
nimirum
opimus, *adj.*
Opimius
polytimus
primus
quadrimus
rimor
rima
ſimia
ſimilax
ſimus, *Adj. & afim.*
ſimius
ſimultas
Simæthus
Strymon
Timagines
Timæus
Timoleon
Timomachus
Timon
Timotheus
Thymaſin
trimus
Theotimus
vimen.

ante

ante N.

acinaces
affinis
altinum
amitinus
apenninus
apyrinum
Aquinas
arpinum
binus
caminus
cinara
ciniphius
clinamen
Cliniades
clinicus
clino
cortinus
crinis
criniſus, *fl.*
Echinus
Euxinus
finio
finis
finitimus

Subſtantiva in inus, ina, inum, i *ante* n *frequentius producunt; corripitur autem in* acinus, aſinus, cophinus, dominus, facinus, ricinus, & ſinus (*a ſhoar, ſail, or garment,*) *quibus adde hæc adverbia*, minùs, cominus, eminus, protinus, *Item hæc propria*, Acyndinus, Æſchinus, Alicinus, Cælinus, Cynicus, Earinus, Enæſinus, Fucinus, Licinus, Linus, Marini, Marinus.

Corripitur etiam in his, in ina; fœmina, fuſcina, gauſapina, lamina, machina, nundinæ, paginа, patina, ſarcina, trutina.

Patronymica in ine *penult. producunt.*

Inachus
inachis
larine
ino
inous
inopus
lacinia
Lavinium
linea
lineus
liniger
linum
mino
Minos
morticinus
nerine
Ninive
Ninus
obſtinatus
omnino
opinor
opinio
opis
Oſinius
Pachynus
peregrinus
Phineus
Photinus
pinus
Plinius
popina
propino
pulvinar
quinus
quinimo
reſina
rhinoceros
ſagino
ſchinos
ſcrinium
Sina, *mons.*
ſinada
ſpina
ſpinetus
ſpinetum
Thynus
triclinium
Trinacria
trinitas
trinus
vinea
vinetum
vinitor
vinolentus
vinum

ante P.

Aliphe
Colyphium
Cyperus, *herba.*
Diphilus
Enipeus
Eriphyle
Euripus
griphus
Iphianaſſæus
Iphiclus

Iphi-

Iphigenia
Iphitus
meliphylla
Niphe
obſtipus
pipio-is
pipio, *ſubſt.*
pipilo-as
pipo
ripa
Riphus
Riphæus, *mons.*
ſcipio
Scriphos
ſipho
Siphon
ſipus-untis
ſtipes
ſtipo
ſtipendium
ſyparium
triplex
triplico
Tiphys
Typha
Typhon, c.
Typhus
vipera

ante Q.

antiquus
iniquus
liquor, *ſubſt.*
liquidus
liqueſco
obliquo
obliquus

ante R.

ancyra
apyrinus
Buſiris
butyrum
Chirurgus, *& quæ à χειρ.*
Cercyros
Chiron
cirinus
ciris
collyrium
corcyra
Cyrene
Cyrus
Deianira
delirus
Diræ
dirus
Epyrus
equiria
gyrus
Hyreus, *diſſyl.*
Jairus
ira
iris
Ironica
Iſus
Itaira
lyra
Liriope
Liris
liro
Lyris
Lyrus
Magirus
mira
miror
mirus
nimirum
Nireus
Nirea
Oſiris
papyrus
pirata
Piræus
Pirene
Perithous
Podalirius
Pthiriaſis
pyramis
Pyramus
Pyreicus
Pyrenæi, *montes.*
Pyrethrum
pyrites
Rabirius
Sapphirus
Scyros
Semiramis
Sephirus
Siris, *fl.*
Sirius
ſirem
ſpira
ſpiramentum
ſpiraculum
ſpiro
ſpiritus
ſtagira
ſtiria
Syrinx
Tireſias
Tiridates
tiro
Tyros
Tirynthius
virgeo
vires
viroſus

virus

virus

ante S.

Anchiſes
Amphiſa
Amphryſus
Briſeis
Chryſeis
Cambyſes
chryſanthus
chryſendeton
Chryſippus
Chryſogonus
chryſolithus
chryſophris
criſius
Dioniſius
diviſus
Eliſa
Eliſius
Eliſus
Etiſus
Particip. in Iſus
Iſaac, c.
Iſaias, c.
Iſæus
Iſis
Iſiphilus
Iſiphates
Lyſippus
Miſellus
Miſenus
miſumenus
myſia
myſæus
myſus
niſa
niſus
paradiſus
paralyſis
Piſa
Piſander
piſanus
piſenor
phiſon
phiſeter
phyſicus
piſo-is
piſum
Siſyphus
Tiſimanes
Tiſiphone
viſibilis
viſito
viſo-is
Viſus

ante T.

accitus *nom.*
aconitum
Agapitus
Anitia
Amphitrite!
Aquitania. c.
architis
aritia
auritus
aphrodita
Beritus
bithus
Bithynia
blitum
Britones
catamitus
Chitæus
clitellæ
Clitus
clitorius
clitumnus
cocytus
comitia
convitium
Corytus
Corythas
corbita
dites
diteſco
dithyrambus
emiſſitius
galerita
Heraclitus
Hermaphroditus
idolothytum
ilithya
invitus
invito
irrito
Italia
Italides
Italus
Græcis in ita, itas, ites, itis
Der. in itius, iticus
Derivatis quartæ conjugationis in itus *& etiam in Derivat. à ſupinis longis, ut*, acerſitus.
litera
litigo
laſerpitium
Luſitania
Mauritania
mellitus
mephitis
miſithius
mitis
mitulis

mytilus

mytilus
multitia
nitela
nitor, *verb.*
oblitero
Orithya
paralyticus
paraſitus
piruita
Pythagoras
Pythius
Python
pytiſma
polygiton
Potitius
rite
ritus
ſcite
ſcitus
ſcitor
ſcriblita
Scython
Sithonia
Titan
Tithonus
Therſites
titillo
Tityrus
Triton
tritura
Tritonius
triticum
viritim
vita
vitex
vitis
vito
Zythum

I *ante* V *producitur omnino.*

O *Producitur in ſequentibus.*

ante B.

Canobus
conſobrinus
Crobialus
Gobinius
gobio
Jacobus
Jobus
Longobardus
Meobile
mobilis
nobilis
nobis
obex
October
Penobus
probrum
Robigus
robur
Sobrietas
ſobrius
Tobias
vobis
utrobique

ante C.

Cocalus
Cocytus
focale, *à faux.*
Jodocus
locuſta
mediocris
negocium
Oceanus
ocium
ocymum
ocyor
Verbis in ocinor
Subſt. in ocinium
Ochenius
Ochus
phoca
phocus
procerus
poculum
præfoco
procopius
procus
Socrates
ſuffoco
vocalis
vociferor
vocula

ante D.

Auguſtodunum
Botrodum
Clodius
Clycerodes
codex
codicillus
Codrus
cuſtodio
Dodona
dodrans
emoda
epodos
Erodius
Glycerodes
Herodes
Hilarodes
Jodocus
Laodæus
lodex
nodo

nodus

nodus
Nebrodes
oda, *vel* ode
odi
Orodes
plodo
podex
prodigium
prodigus
Prosodia
rodo
sodes
Theodosius
Thermodon
Zodiacus

ante G.

Chirographa
cogito
cogitatio
cogo
Ogyges
octoginta
Zographus
[*quæ ab* ἀγωγὴ, *ut*, pædagogus.]

ante L.

Ætholus
Ætolus
Bola
boletus
Capitolium
Cimolus
coles
coleus
coliculus
Colimus
colis, *mons.*
colo-as
colum
colyphium
dolium
idolum
Jola
Jolas
loligo
mausolus
meobole
moles
molimen
molior
moly
nolo
Compositis à πωλέω, πῶλος *ut*, bibliopola, tricolum, &c.
Olenus
Oliaros
olim
Pactolus
Phicolus
Polydamas
polypus, *morb.*
præstolor
proles
psoleon
solennis
solers
solamen
solitudo
solo-as
solor
solùm
solus
Spoletum
Timolus
Tmolus

ante M.

abominor
abdomen
amomum
aroma
Et in omnibus ejusmodi neutris in oma, omen, omum
Bromius
Comageni
comicus
cominus
comis
comissor
comitas
comitia
como
comœdia
encomium
Esromus
fomes
fomentum
glomus-eris
Ithome
Ithomus
lomentum
momentum
momus
omex
pomarium
Pometii
Pomona
pomum
pomus
promo
promontorium
promus
Roma
Romulus

Salo-

Salome
Thomas
tomentum
Tomitanus
vomer

ante N.

Adonis
Alcona
Antonius
Amone
Antoniorum
Bononia
colonus
conamen
conatus
Cone
concionor
conopæum
conops
conor
conus
Coronis
cororis
corono-as
Cronus
donec
donicum
dono
donum
Edonus
Feronia
Hipponax
Jonia
Monicus
nonaginta
nonus
Nonacris
Desinentibus in ona *ut*, persona; *Item*

in compositis ab {-ὄνομα, -φωνὴ, -φωνία, -γωνία}
ut, Jerōnymus, Antiphōna, euphōnia, trigōnum.
Item in onius *à genitivis longis*, *ut*, Babylonius
Octonus
patronus
Petronius
pone
pono
pronubus
pronus
Salmoneus
Saloninus
Sarone
Theoninus
Thonius
Zona
Zonarius
Zonatim

ante P.

Ærope
Æsopus
Alopecea
apostiopesis
Asopus
Canopus
Cercopes
conopium
copa
Cophe
copia
copo-onis
copula

Crotopus
dropax
Epope
Europa
Hissopus
Inopus
Jopas
Leucopetra
metoplon
operior
opidum
Ophias
opillio
opis
popisma
poples
popula
populus, *arbor.*
propola
propius
prosopon
Psophis
pyropus
reportia
scopæ
scropha
sinope
siriope
Sophonius
Sophronia
sopio
stlopus
Theophila
tophus
Zopyrus

ante R.

Achoreus
aurora
auctoratus

Chlo-

Chloreus
Chloris
Chorasmia
Chrysolorus
ciborium
colora
coram
corus
Corycus
Corienis
Corytus
Cytorus
Diores
Dores
Doris
Dorycus, c.
Doriclus, c.
Flora
Floralia
floreo
Florus
gloria
glorior
Helorus
hora
Horeb
Horops
Horas
horoscopus
ignoro
lorica
loripes
lorum
Lycoris
mantichora
meteorum
mores
morio
moras
morosus
morum
morus
Noricum
Oporinus

Deriv. ab obliquis longis in
orum
ora
orus
orium
oria
orius

ora
oraculum
orata, *pisc.*
Orion
Orithya
Oritæ, *gens.*
oro
oryx
peloris
Pelorus
Phora
ploro
Polydorus
Porus, *Rex.*
prora
Proreus
psora
Psoricum
roro -as
scoria
Sora
sorex
Soracte
sorites
theorema
thorax
victoria

ante S.

alosa
Gnosius
Josephus
Josia
Moses
Osinius
osor
Deriv. in osus
prosa
prosapia
Proserpina
Rosea
rosidus
Sosibianus
Tholosa
Thosippe

ante T.

ægocerotis
ægrotus
Asaroton
asotus
Cariotus
carnotum
cerotum
Clotho
cotillus
cotis
coturnix
Deltoton
devoto
doto -as
Eurotas
glotero
lotus
innotesco
iota
Lothis
Lotium
Lotophagus
lotum
lotus, *arb.*

Lotus
moto -as
motus
notus, *adj.*

Finis in { ota / otes / oticus / otis

notio
notior
Othys
otium
Photinus
Plotæ
Plotinus
potio
poto
Proteus
protinus
Psilotron
quotidianus
Scoti
serotinus
soter
soteria
totus
votum

ante V.

Jovius
novicus
Novomagus
ovis
ovum
provincia
provisor

U *Producitur in sequentibus.*

ante B.

Ambubaia
Anubis
Bubasides
Bubastus
bubo, *avis*
bubulus
connubium, &c.
cubus
delubrum
glubo
jubilum
manubrium
nubes
nubilis
nubilo
nubo
puber
pubes
rubigo
saluber
suber
subula
subulo, *subst.*
uber, *subst.*
volubilis

ante C.

bruchus
buceria
bucerus
bucolicus
Bucephalus
bucula
carruca
cucubo
caducus, *adj.*
cucurio
duco
Eunuchus
festuca
fucus
jucundus
lactuca
Lucæ
Lucagus
Lucania
Lucas
luceo
Luceres
Lucilius
Lucrinus
lucubro
lueulentus
Lucullus
lucus
Mucius
mucidus
mucro
mucus
Nuceria
nucleus
peculium
sambuca
sumbucus
Sampsucus
subucula
tucetum
Ucalegon
veruculum

ante D.

cludo
corruda
erudelis

erude-

crudeferocus
crudus
cudo, *verbo*
dudum
judex
judico
Judith
ludo
ludus
nudius, *in compos.*
nudo -as
nudus
prudens
rudera
ſudarium
ſudo
ſudor
ſudum
trudo
udus

ante F.

bufo
Rufinus
Rufulus
Rufus
Uſens

ante G.

Corugis
corrugo -as
fruges
frugi
juger
jugis
jugiter
lugeo
lugubris
mugil
mugio
nugæ
nugator
nugor
pugio -onis
pugillaris
rugæ
ſanguiſuga
ſugo

ante L.

aculeus
adulor
Amulius
Apulia
Bulimeon
Cuculus, c.
culeus
culullus
culus
Dulichium
fuligo
Getulus
Julianus
Julius
Julus
mulo
mulis
mulinus
mulus
pulegium
pulex
Thule
torcular, c.
uligo
Deriv. ulis
in alium

ante M.

acumen
bitumen
bruma
brumalis
bumaſtus
cacumen
Cumæ
cumea
cumanus
dumetum
dumus
frumentum
fumifer
fumo -as
fumoſus
fumus
gruma
grumus
humanus
humeo
humecto
humidus
humor
Idumea
legumen
lumen
numen
Numitius
Numantia
numus
pluma
pumex
pumilo
pumilio, c.
pumilus
Ruma
rumen
Ruminus

rumino
rumo
rumor
ſpuma
ſpumo -as
ſpumoſus
ſtrumoſus
ſumen
ſumo

ante N.

Bunas
clunis
communico
communio
communis
cunabula
cunæ
fortuna
funalia
funebræ
funeſto
funis
funus
huni
jejunus
Junius
juniperus
junior
junix
Juno
lacuna
Luna, *urbs.*
Luna, *planeta.*
munia
municeps
munio
munus
pecunia
pruna
prunum
prunus
Punicus
puniceus
punior
Tribunus
Tribunitius
Vertunus
una
unanimus
unicolor
unicus
unio, *nom. & verb.*
uniter
univerſus

ante P.

cupa
cupedo
Jupiter
marſupium
nuper
pupa
pupilla
pupillus
pupula
pupus
rupes
ſerupeus
ſcrupoſus
ſcrupulum
ſcrupus
ſtupa
ſtupeus
Upilio

ante R.

admiſſura
Arcturus
buris
cœſura
complures
cucurio
cura
curabilis
curæ
curetes
curia
curioſus
curio
curo
durabilis
duramen
durateus
dureo
dureſco
Duria
duriter
durities
duro -as
durus
Etruria
furandus
furor -aris
Ituræus
juramentum
juriſonus
juro
injuria
ligurio
luridus
luror
Mamurius, c.
menſura
murena
murex
murus
obſcuro
obſcurus
obturo

penuria

prurigo
prurio
purus
ruralis
ſcaturio
ſcalpturio
ſura
thureus
thuribulum
thuricremus
thurifer
thurinus
Turia, *fl.*
trania
urina
uro
urus
uruca
Uri -orum
uſura

ante S.

accuſo
Arethuſa
Buſiris
cluſium
cluſinus
Druſonem
Druſus
excuſo
fuſilis
ſuſus
hirſutus
incuſo
incuſus
induſium
luſus
Meduſa
muſa
obtuſus
Paduſa
Pruſiacus
puſio
Rhamnuſius
Suſa
Suſana, *opp.*
Telethuſa
truſo -as
Venuſia, *c.*
Venuſinus, *c.*
Uſipii
uſitatus
uſura
uſurpo
uſus

ante T.

actutum
acutus
adjuto
Albutius
aluca
argutus
aſtutus
balbutio
Brutidius
Brutius
Brutus
Butes
Buthrotum
butio
cicuta
cicuticines
Complutenſis
confuto
cornutus
exutus
fluto
futilis
gluten
glutio
gluto
luteolus
lutus
mutio
muto, *nom. & verb.*
mutus
mutuus
nutus
obrutesco
obtutus
Plutarchus
Pluto
præputium
prolutus
puteo
putor, *nom.*
putus
ruta
rutatus
rutilis
ſaluto
ſcutatus
ſcutum
ſputum
ſputo -as
ſputamen
ſutilis
ſutor
tributum
tutamen
tutari
tutela
tutor, *nom. & verb.*
tutus
verutum
voluto
utilis
utilitas
utor

uva
uvesco
uvidus
Uvidius.

Lector eruditus, quòd licèt Syllabæ in præ-
te catalogo memoratæ frequentius produ-
; nonnullæ tamen apud Autores aliquan-
rripiuntur. Verum ne Tyronum carmina
modi erroribus nonnunquam scateant, adjeci
dictionibus literam (c.) Moneator igitur puer-
, quòd ubi hæc nota (c) reperitur, syllaba
ro ancipiti habeatur; ut, *a* in *Abel*; *u* in *Venu-*
, &c.

Soli Deo Gloria.

FINIS.